



The Kyocera Smartphone

Reference Guide

QCP™ 6035

www.kyocera-wireless.com



The Kyocera Smartphone

Reference Guide

***for the QCP™ 6035 Smartphone
by Kyocera***



10300 Campus Point Drive
San Diego, California 92121 U.S.A.
Visit us at www.kyocera-wireless.com
For accessories, visit www.kyocera-wireless.com/store

This manual is based on the production version of the QCP™ 6035 smartphone by Kyocera. Software changes may have occurred after this printing. Kyocera reserves the right to make changes in technical and product specifications without prior notice. The products and equipment described in this documentation are manufactured under license from QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following U.S. patents:

4,901,307	5,056,109	5,099,204	5,101,501	5,103,459	5,107,225	5,109,390	5,193,094	5,228,054
5,257,283	5,265,119	5,267,261	5,267,262	5,280,472	5,283,536	5,289,527	5,307,405	5,309,474
5,337,338	5,339,046	5,341,456	5,383,219	5,392,287	5,396,516	D356,560	5,408,697	5,414,728
5,414,796	5,416,797	5,426,392	5,437,055	D361,065	5,442,322	5,442,627	5,452,473	5,461,639
5,469,115	5,469,471	5,471,497	5,475,870	5,479,475	5,483,696	5,485,486	5,487,175	5,490,165
5,497,395	5,499,280	5,504,773	5,506,865	5,509,015	5,509,035	5,511,067	5,511,073	5,513,176
5,515,177	5,517,323	5,519,761	5,528,593	5,530,928	5,533,011	5,535,239	5,539,531	5,544,196
5,544,223	5,546,459	5,548,812	5,559,881	5,559,865	5,561,618	5,564,083	5,566,000	5,566,206
5,566,357	5,568,483	5,574,773	5,574,987	D375,740	5,576,662	5,577,022	5,577,265	D375,937
5,588,043	D376,804	5,589,756	5,590,069	5,590,406	5,590,408	5,592,548	5,594,718	5,596,570
5,600,754	5,602,834	5,602,833	5,603,096	5,604,459	5,604,730	5,608,722	5,614,806	5,617,060
5,621,752	5,621,784	5,621,853	5,625,876	5,627,857	5,629,955	5,629,975	5,638,412	5,640,414
5,642,398	5,644,591	5,644,596	5,646,991	5,652,814	5,654,979	5,655,220	5,657,420	5,659,569
5,663,807	5,666,122	5,673,259	5,675,581	5,675,644	5,680,395	5,687,229	D386,186	5,689,557
5,691,974	5,692,006	5,696,468	5,697,055	5,703,902	5,704,001	5,708,448	5,710,521	5,710,758
5,710,768	5,710,784	5,715,236	5,715,526	5,722,044	5,722,053	5,722,061	5,722,063	5,724,385
5,727,123	5,729,540	5,732,134	5,732,341	5,734,716	5,737,687	5,737,708	5,742,734	D393,856
5,748,104	5,751,725	5,751,761	5,751,901	5,754,533	5,754,542	5,754,733	5,757,767	5,757,858
5,758,266	5,761,204	5,764,687	5,774,496	5,777,990	5,778,024	5,778,338	5,781,543	5,781,856
5,781,867	5,784,406	5,784,532	5,790,589	5,790,632	5,793,338	D397,110	5,799,005	5,799,254
5,802,105	5,805,648	5,805,843	5,812,036	5,812,094	5,812,097	5,812,538	5,812,607	5,812,651
5,812,938	5,818,871	5,822,318	5,825,253	5,828,348	5,828,661	5,835,065	5,835,847	5,839,052
5,841,806	5,842,124	5,844,784	5,844,885	5,844,899	5,844,985	5,848,063	5,848,099	5,850,612
5,852,421	5,854,565	5,854,786	5,857,147	5,859,612	5,859,838	5,859,840	5,861,844	5,862,471
5,862,474	5,864,760	5,864,763	5,867,527	5,867,763	5,870,427	5,870,431	5,870,674	5,872,481
5,872,774	5,872,775	5,872,823	5,877,942	5,878,036	5,870,631	5,881,053	5,881,368	5,884,157
5,884,193	5,884,196	5,892,178	5,892,758	5,892,774	5,892,816	5,892,916	5,893,035	D407,701
5,898,920	5,903,554	5,903,862	D409,561	5,907,167	5,909,434	5,910,752	5,911,128	5,912,882
D410,893	5,914,950	5,915,235	5,917,708	5,917,811	5,917,812	5,917,837	5,920,284	5,920,834
D411,823	5,923,650	5,923,705	5,926,143	5,926,470	5,926,500	5,926,786	5,926,786	5,930,230
5,930,692	Other patents pending.							

FCC/IC Notice

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The exposure standard for wireless mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6Watts per kilogram (W/kg). Tests for SAR are conducted using standard operating positions specified by the FCC with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a wireless base station antenna, the lower the power output.

Before a phone model is available for sale to the public, it must be tested and certified to the FCC that it does not exceed the limit established by the government-adopted requirement for safe exposure. The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g., at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model phone when tested for use at the ear is 1.41 W/kg and when worn on the body at the waist is 0.69 W/kg. (Body-worn measurements differ among phone models, depending upon available accessories and FCC requirements). While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the government requirement for safe exposure. The SAR values shown above (1.41 W/kg and 0.69 W/kg) are worst case values for a Kyocera smartphone. A typical Kyocera Smartphone is 1.23 W/kg at the ear and 0.395 W/kg when worn on the body.

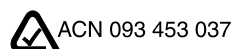
Warning

Use only Kyocera Wireless Corp. approved accessories with Kyocera Wireless Corp. phones. Use of any unauthorized accessories may be dangerous and will invalidate the phone warranty if said accessories cause damage or a defect to the phone.

To comply with FCC radiation exposure requirements, use of this device for body-worn operational configurations is limited to accessories tested and approved by Kyocera Wireless Corp. Other accessories used with this device for body-worn operations must not contain any metallic components and must provide at least 22.75mm separation distance including the antenna and the user's body. Other belt-clips, holsters or similar accessories that have not been tested for body-worn SAR may not comply with FCC RF exposure limit and should be avoided.

Caution

The user is cautioned that changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the warranty and user's authority to operate the equipment.



Apple and Macintosh are registered trademarks, and iMac is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. Kyocera is a registered trademark of Kyocera Corporation. QCP is a trademark of Kyocera Wireless Corp. Microsoft, Windows, and Windows NT are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. Graffiti and HotSync are registered trademarks, and Palm and the Palm Computing platform logo are trademarks of Palm, Inc., 3COM Corporation, or its subsidiaries. Eudora is a registered trademark of the University of Illinois Board of Trustees, licensed to QUALCOMM Incorporated. America Online and Compuserve are registered trademarks of America Online, Inc. WinFax is a registered trademark of Symantec Corporation. Other product and brand names may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

Copyright © 2000, 2001 Kyocera Wireless Corp. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. Portions of this document are Copyright © 1998 3Com Corporation or its subsidiaries. Reprinted with permission.

80-B6596-2EN, Rev. A

Contents

Chapter 1—Introducing the Kyocera Smartphone	9
What to do first	10
Turning the phone on and off	12
Phone features	14
Features with the keypad closed	15
Features with the keypad open	19
Palm applications	20
Accessories for your Kyocera Smartphone	21
Where to get more information	21
Where to go next	22
Chapter 2—Making and Receiving Calls	23
Dialing calls on the keypad	24
Using the Dialer	25
Making a call from Speed Dial	28
Making a call from the Contacts list	30
Making a call from the Address Book	31
Redialing recent calls	32
Checking your own phone number	34
Making a conference call	34
Making a data connection	35
Answering calls	36
Answering calls “hands-free”	37
Ending calls	38
Adjusting sounds	39
Looking up information on your phone	42
Using power-save mode	44
Viewing the phone status bar	46
Chapter 3—Using the Organizer	48
Selecting applications	49
Entering information	51
Using application controls	59
Using menus	59
Choosing fonts	61
Using categories	62
Attaching notes	65
Marking private entries	66
Installing applications	66
Removing applications from the phone	69
Removing the Desktop software	69

Chapter 4—Transferring Information	70
Installing Kyocera smartphone Desktop software	71
Synchronizing data using the sync cradle	74
Synchronizing data remotely	76
Synchronizing data using the infrared port	81
Creating a user profile	84
Modifying synchronization options	85
Customizing a conduit	87
Transferring information between Palm devices	88
Troubleshooting HotSync operations	90
Beaming information	91
Chapter 5—Address Book	94
Creating Address Book entries	95
Making calls from the Address Book	96
Editing Address Book entries	98
Beaming entries to other devices	103
Deleting entries	104
Using Address Book menus	106
Chapter 6—Call History and the Recent Calls List	108
Opening lists of your recent calls	109
Making a call from Call History	110
Viewing your calls	111
Deleting calls	113
Setting up your preferences in Call History	114
Creating an expense record	114
Using the menus in Call History	116
Chapter 7—Date Book	119
Scheduling events in the Date Book	120
Scheduling repeating events	124
Deleting an event	126
Changing the Date Book view	128
Using the Date Book menus	132
Chapter 8—Expense	134
Creating an Expense item	135
Entering or modifying receipt details	136
Printing expense reports	140
Transferring your data to an Excel spreadsheet	141
Sample expense report templates	143
Customizing the templates	147
Using the Expense menus	153

Chapter 9—Memo Pad	155
Creating memos	156
Reviewing and editing memos	156
Beaming a memo	159
Deleting a memo	159
Using Memo Pad menus	160
Chapter 10—Messages	162
Setting up the Messages application	163
Checking your messages	164
Sending messages	166
Erasing messages	167
Setting preferences	169
Chapter 11—Setting Up Network Connections	171
Getting started with network connections	172
Entering network settings	173
Creating and using service templates	180
Using service template menus	182
Troubleshooting network connections	183
Creating a login script	184
Setting a proxy server	187
Using Data/Fax mode with the wireless modem	188
Chapter 12—Setting Preferences	195
About preferences	196
Setting Button preferences	197
Setting Connection preferences	199
Using the Digitizer	203
Setting Format preferences	203
Setting General preferences	204
Setting Network preferences	206
Setting Owner preferences	206
Setting Phone preferences	206
Setting Power preferences	211
Setting Registry preferences	213
Setting ShortCuts preferences	213
Setting Sounds preferences	215
Setting Wireless preferences	218
Chapter 13—Security	220
Using Keyguard	221
Showing or hiding private entries	223
Locking the phone	224

Chapter 14—Speed Dial	228
Adding an entry to the Speed Dial list	229
Making calls using Speed Dial	231
Editing the Speed Dial list	232
Deleting entries	234
Using Speed Dial menus	235
Chapter 15—To Do List	236
Creating To Do items	237
Setting Item Details	238
Deleting a To Do item	239
Displaying your To Do list	240
Using the To Do List menus	242
Chapter 16—Voice Dial	243
Training Voice Dial	244
Making and answering calls with Voice Dial	245
Chapter 17—Voice Memos	247
Recording a voice memo	248
Replaying your voice memos	250
Managing your voice memos	251
Chapter 18—Troubleshooting	256
Where to find help	257
Resetting the phone	258
Troubleshooting tips	260
Phone care	263
Safety information	267
Appendix A—Phone Menus	270
Making selections from flip-closed menus	271
Phone Info menu	275
Contacts menu	275
Recent Calls menu	275
Settings menu	276
Voice Memo menu	284
Messages menu	284
Appendix B—Glossary	285
Appendix C—End-User Software License Agreement	291

Chapter 1

Introducing the Kyocera Smartphone

Congratulations on your purchase of the Kyocera smartphone.

Your new phone combines two leading-edge technologies, giving you the convenience of a CDMA digital phone and an electronic organizer in a single handset.

The Kyocera smartphone looks and works like other phones and electronic organizers you may already have used. But it is much more, since it is both a phone and an organizer. Because these features are completely integrated, you can use the telephone features and the organizer features together or independently. You can use the phone features with the keypad open or closed. You can use the organizer applications without turning the phone on at all.

This chapter introduces your phone and provides an overview of its features.

In this chapter

- | | |
|---|---------|
| ■ What to do first | page 10 |
| ■ Turning the phone on and off | page 12 |
| ■ Phone features | page 14 |
| ■ Features with the keypad closed | page 15 |
| ■ Features with the keypad open | page 19 |
| ■ Palm applications | page 20 |
| ■ Accessories for your Kyocera Smartphone | page 21 |
| ■ Where to get more information | page 21 |
| ■ Where to go next | page 22 |

What to do first

The batteries in your phone are delivered partially charged. Before first use, you must install the main battery and fully charge it. You must also allow enough time for the internal backup battery to charge completely. You will need the following:

- Kyocera smartphone
- battery
- phone power cable
- sync cradle (optional)

To install the battery

1. Hold the phone so the keypad faces away from you.
2. Open the battery compartment door on the lower back of the phone using your finger or the stylus.
3. Lift off the battery compartment door.

IMPORTANT: Do not remove the circular plug on the back of your phone above the battery compartment. Improper removal of this service access plug can result in permanent damage to the phone and will void your warranty.

4. Slide the battery into the battery compartment with the Kyocera label facing you.
The end of the battery with four copper-colored depressions goes toward the top of the phone.
5. Apply gentle pressure until the battery snaps into place.
6. Replace the battery cover.



NOTE In addition to the main battery you just installed, your phone has an internal backup battery. During shipment, this backup battery may have become discharged. If so, the phone will not power up immediately after you install the main battery. Just connect the phone to the power cable or place it in the cradle as explained in the next section.

To charge the batteries

Both of the batteries—the main battery you just installed and the internal backup battery—are recharged when the phone is connected to power. You can charge the batteries using either the power cable or the sync cradle.

To charge the batteries using the power cable

1. Insert the small round plug of the power cable into the round port on the base of the phone. Plug the other end into an AC power outlet.

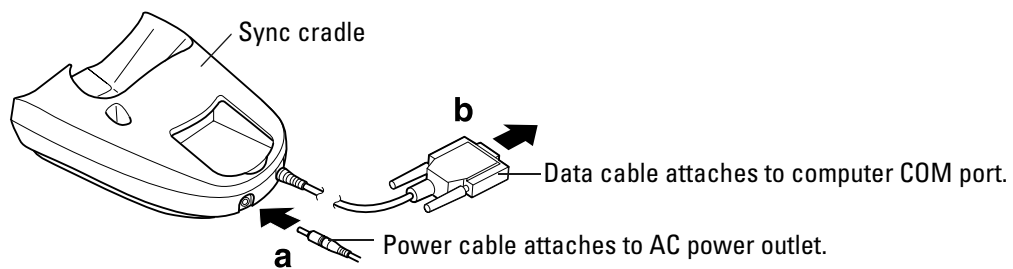
The message “Phone is charging” appears on the screen. Before your first use of the phone, wait until the message “Charging is complete” appears. If the battery is completely drained, it may take 6–8 hours to charge the first time.



2. Unplug the phone from the power cable.

To charge the batteries in the sync cradle

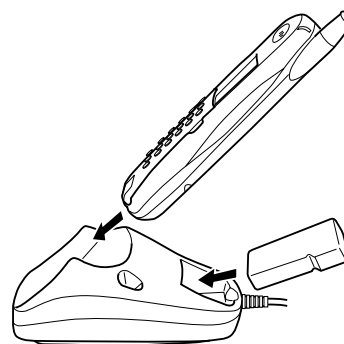
1. Place the sync cradle on a flat surface near your computer.
2. Insert the small round plug of the power cable (a) into the base of the sync cradle. Plug the other end of the cable into a power outlet.



3. To attach the sync cradle to your computer, do the following:
 - a. Turn off the computer.
 - b. Plug the data cable from the sync cradle (b) into a serial communications (COM) port on your computer. The sync cradle requires a dedicated port; it cannot share a port with an internal modem, IR port, or other device.
 - c. Turn on the computer.
4. Slide the base of the phone into the sync cradle.

The message “Phone is charging” appears on the screen. Before your first use of the phone, wait until the message “Charging is complete” appears. If the battery is completely drained, it may take 6–8 hours to charge the first time.

Once the main battery is charged, you can use the Kyocera Smartphone in the cradle or out of the cradle for all functions. Leaving the phone in the cradle when you are not using it is a convenient way to keep the battery charged.



5. If you have purchased an extra battery, you can recharge it in the cradle at the same time. Slide the battery into the rear port with the Kyocera label facing up.

The light on the sync cradle shows the status of the battery in the rear port.

- Red—The battery is not charged.
- Green—The battery is fully charged.
- Flashing red—The battery is not making contact or there is a charging problem. Reset the battery. If the problem is not resolved, contact your service provider.

NOTE: The first port filled is the first port to charge. If you insert the extra battery into the rear port before you place the phone in the front port, the extra battery will be charged first.

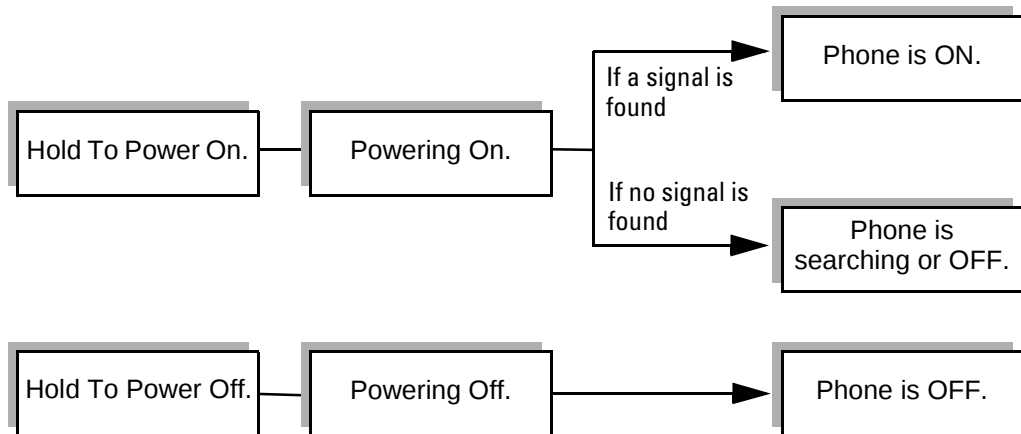
Turning the phone on and off

To turn on the phone for the first time

1. With the flip closed, press and hold  for a few seconds. You see the message “Powering on” on the screen.
2. Remove the stylus from its slot on the top left side of the phone.
3. Open the flip. Follow the procedures in the welcome screens to calibrate the phone. Use the stylus to tap the screen when you are instructed to do so. To prevent scratches, never use a pen, pencil, or other sharp object to tap or write on the screen. The phone is now ready to use.

To turn the phone on and off at any time

Press and hold down  for a few seconds. Status messages appear on the screen.



When the phone is on and it finds a signal, the home screen appears.



When the phone is powered on and the flip is closed, the home screen appears.

The home screen gives you information about battery power and signal strength. From this screen, you can make calls or open the flip-closed menus by pressing the shuttle in.

Phone features

- ① **Backlight button and infrared port**—Tap the button to turn the screen on and off. Press and hold the button to turn the backlight on and off. Point the infrared port at other devices for beaming data.
- ② **Antenna**—Extend during calls.
- ③ **LED**
Green = Home area
Amber = Roaming
Red = No signal or low power
- ④ **Stylus**—Slide the stylus out of its slot. Hold it like a pen to write on the screen. NEVER USE A PEN, PENCIL, OR OTHER SHARP OBJECT ON THE SURFACE OF THE SCREEN.
- ⑤ **Shuttle**—Roll the shuttle up or down to scroll through menus. Press it in to make selections. During a call, roll it up or down to adjust the volume.
- ⑥ **Headset jack**—Plug the headset cable in here.
- ⑦ **Data port**—Plug the data cable in here.
- ⑧ **Power port**—Plug the power cable in here to recharge the battery without the sync cradle.



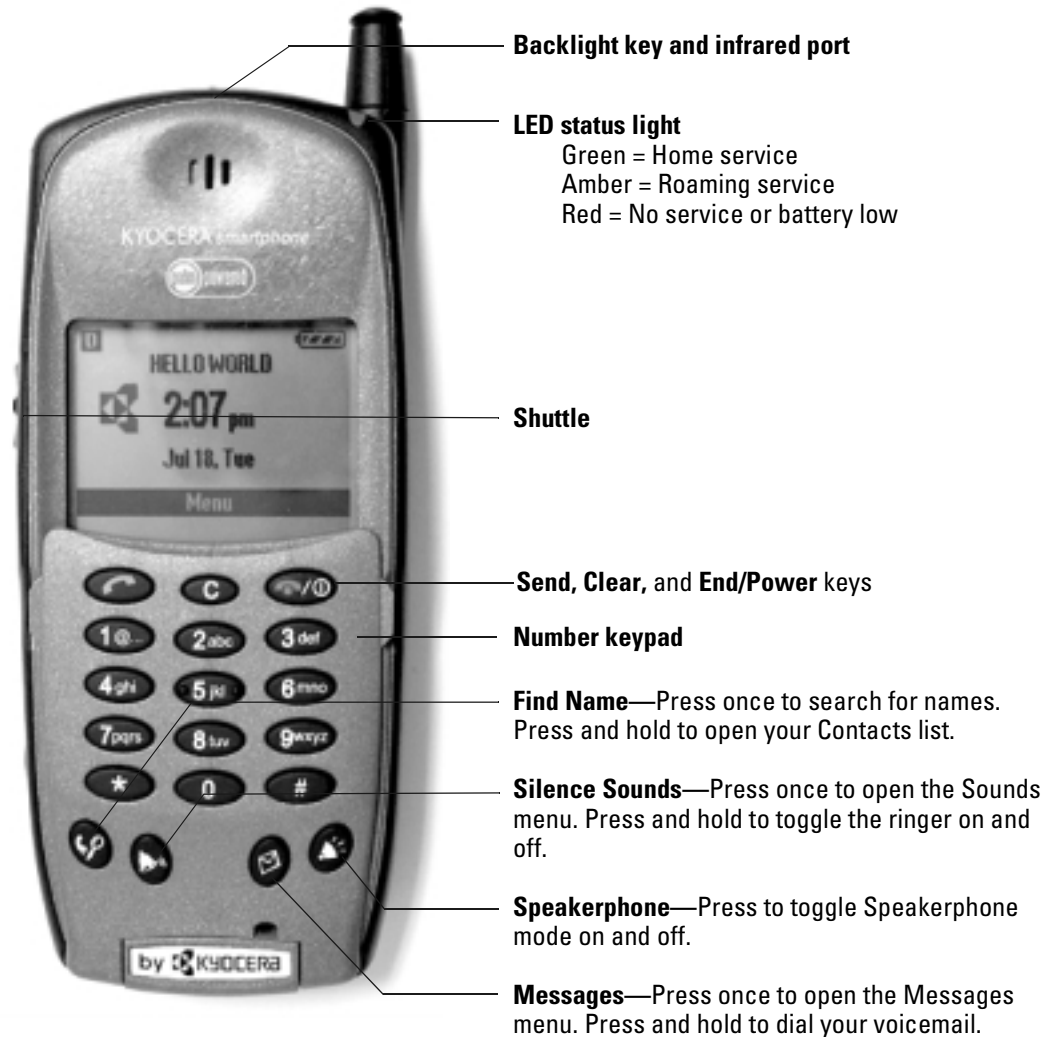
When the phone is turned on

- You can send and receive calls. If there is an incoming, outgoing, or active phone call, information about the call appears on the screen.
- You can use the phone with the keypad flipped open or closed. If you are using an application when the phone rings, you can answer the call with confidence. The Kyocera Smartphone stores your work for you automatically.

When the phone is turned off

- You can use all the organizer features, but you cannot send or receive calls, send or receive email, or search the Web.

Features with the keypad closed



Keys on your phone



Send/Talk key

Press this key (the green phone icon) to send or answer a call.



Clear key

- In menus, press this key to move back to the previous menu level.
- When entering or editing text, press the key to move the cursor to the left and erase the last character. Press and hold the key to erase an entire line.



End/Power key

- When on a call, press this key once to end the call.
- To turn the phone on or off, press and hold down the key for about two seconds until you see “Powering On” or “Powering Off.”
- In menus, press this key to exit the menus and return to the Home screen.

1–0

Numeric keys

Press these keys to enter the numbers or letters printed on them.



Find Name key

- Press the key once to search for names in your Address Book.
- Press *and hold* the key to open your Contacts list.



Silence Sounds key

- Press the key once to view the Sounds menu where you can silence all sounds or adjust the ringer volume.
- Press *and hold* the key to turn all sounds off. When sounds are off, the bell icon and the words “Ringer Off” appear on screen. Press *and hold* the key again to turn the sound back on.



Messages key

- Press the key once to view the Messages menu where you can check your voicemail or pager messages.
- Press *and hold* the key to dial directly into your voicemail service.



Speakerphone key

- Press the key to put the phone in Speakerphone mode.
- Press the key again to take the phone out of Speakerphone mode.

Using the shuttle

The shuttle is designed to be pressed in three ways: up, down, and in.

To use the shuttle (with the flip closed)

The phone must be turned on to use the shuttle with the flip closed.

- Roll the shuttle up or down to scroll through menu items. From the top item in a menu, roll the shuttle up twice to back up to a previous menu.
- Press the shuttle in to select a highlighted item.
- During conversation, roll the shuttle up or down to adjust the earpiece volume during a call.
- Shortcut to the Contact List—From the home screen, press the shuttle up once to view the Contact list. This shortcut works when the Main Menu View is set to List Menus (the default setting). If you have changed the Main Menu View to Large Icons, pressing the shuttle either up or down moves through the icons instead of opening the Contact List.

- **Shortcut to Voice Memos**—From the home screen, press the shuttle down once to view the Voice Memo list. This shortcut works when the Main Menu View is set to List Menus (the default setting). If you have changed the Main Menu View to Large Icons, pressing the shuttle either up or down moves through the icons instead of opening Voice Memos..

To use the shuttle (with the flip open)

- Roll the shuttle up or down to move through lists, text, or applications on the screen. The shuttle works like the Up and Down keys.
- Press the shuttle in to view a status bar at the top of the screen showing the following information:
 - If the phone is on**— Signal strength and battery charge
 - If the phone is off**— Time and battery charge
- Press the shuttle in again to remove the status bar.

Status indicators

On the top line of the screen, the status bar displays icons to show the phone's current status. You might see the following icons:

-  **Digital Mode** means the phone is operating in CDMA digital mode. If this icon isn't present, the phone is either in analog mode or there is no service.
-  **Signal Strength** shows current signal strength. The more lines you see, the stronger the signal. When this icon appears, you can make and receive calls. If the signal strength is very low, you may not be able to complete a call.
-  **No Service** means the phone is not receiving a signal from the system. You cannot make or receive calls. Wait a little longer or move to an open area.
-  **In Use** means a call is in progress. (In standby mode, the phone icon does not appear.)
-  **Roaming** means the phone is outside of its home area.
-  **Envelope** means you have a text message, voice mail, or page.
-  **Padlock** indicates your phone is operating with enhanced CDMA voice privacy (if available from your service provider).
-  **Battery Charge** shows how much power remains in the battery. The more black bars you see, the greater the charge.

Checking status—the LED

The LED indicates the following states:

- **Green**—Home. The phone is on and in its home area. The light flashes slowly when you are not making a call, it flashes three times per ring when you receive a call, and it becomes solid during a call.
- **Amber**—Roaming. The phone is on and in roaming mode. The light flashes slowly when you are not making a call, it flashes three times per ring when you receive a roaming call, and it becomes solid during a call.
- **Red**—No signal available. The phone is on and searching for a signal. The light flashes slowly if there is no service.
- **Rapid red flashes**—Alerts. The LED flashes five times rapidly to signal an incoming message or voice mail. It flashes three times rapidly to signal all other types of alerts.
- **No light**—The phone is off.

Features with the keypad open

When you open the flip, the organizer features appear.



Graffiti® writing area

Write here with the stylus. Write letters on the left and numbers on the right.

Icons

Tap the icons in the area below the screen to open the following:



Applications
Launcher



Dialer



Menus



Find

Application keys

Press these keys to open the following Palm applications:



Date Book



To Do List



Address Book



Memo Pad

Up and Down keys

Press these keys to move through lists.

Palm applications

In your phone package, you will find a CD-ROM containing third-party applications for sending email, browsing the Internet, and using web clipping services. Many other applications are available on the Internet. For help with these applications, contact their source. For example, if you need help with Eudora®, go to the Eudora web site (www.eudora.com).

To use Palm applications

Open the flip.

It does not matter whether the phone is turned on or off. You can use the Palm applications at any time.

Easy access to Palm applications during calls

If you're talking on the phone and need to check information in any of your applications (such as the Date Book or Memo Pad), simply open the application you want to use. Your call is not affected by opening and closing the keypad or by opening any of the applications on your Kyocera Smartphone.

You can use the on-screen keyboard or the stylus to add or change information (such as appointments, addresses, or memos) during the call. Attach the Kyocera Smartphone headset while you are entering information during a phone call for even greater convenience.

If you are already using a Palm device

If you are already familiar with Palm organizers, you'll find that the Kyocera Smartphone operates the same way, with a few exceptions. Many applications like the Address Book have been enhanced so that you can make phone calls directly from them.

Icons—Most icons and buttons are identical to those on your Palm organizer. Only the Calculator icon has been replaced with the Dialer  icon. Tap this icon to open the on-screen Dialer. You'll find the Calculator on the Applications Launcher screen.

Palm Desktop—You do not need to reinstall the Palm Desktop from the CD-ROM. The Kyocera smartphone can use your existing Palm Desktop.

Transferring data—You can transfer all the data from your existing Palm device to your new Kyocera smartphone. Before doing so, however, be sure to read "Transferring information between Palm devices" on page 88.

There are several ways to transfer the data.

- Synchronize the data—Follow this procedure only if you are *not* planning to use your Palm device anymore. See "To synchronize using the same user name" on page 88.
- Copy the data—Follow this procedure if you intend to use *both* devices on an ongoing basis. Since every Palm handheld device must have a unique name,

serious synchronization problems may occur if you synchronize two Palm devices with the same user name. See “To copy and paste data” on page 89 or “To copy data using Windows Explorer” on page 90.

Accessories for your Kyocera Smartphone

You can purchase a number of accessories for your phone, including the following:

- Batteries
- Headsets
- Adaptors
- Phone cases
- Chargers
- Data products

For the full line of accessories, visit our Web site at <http://www.kyocera-wireless.com/store>

Where to get more information

To help you learn about the many features of your Kyocera Smartphone as quickly as possible, your product package includes the following documents.

User’s Guide—The User’s Guide takes you on a quick tour of the phone’s major features. It identifies all the icons, buttons, and controls and explains how to use both phone and organizer features. As you explore, you’ll notice that there are many ways to use your phone. Each procedure begins with a graphic that tells you whether the phone should be on or not, and whether the flip should be open or closed.

Reference Guide—This guide contains detailed information about the Kyocera Smartphone and the applications delivered with it. It includes a glossary and troubleshooting section for reference. To view the Reference Guide, insert the CD-ROM in your computer and double-click the PDF file. You can read and search through this document on your computer or you can print it out. You can also download the latest versions of all phone documentation at www.kyocera-wireless.com.

Where to go next

Preferences

Using the Preferences screens, you can customize the configuration of your Kyocera Smartphone. Your choices range from selecting ringer sounds to configuring the phone for use on a network. See Chapter 12, “Setting Preferences.”

Network settings

Your Kyocera Smartphone is capable of connecting wirelessly to network services for email and Internet access. To make these connections, your service provider must offer digital data coverage in your area.

In most cases, if you have purchased data coverage, your Kyocera Smartphone has already been configured for network services. The network settings have been entered for you by your service provider.

If your phone is not correctly configured, contact your service provider for the correct settings to enter yourself. For details about network settings, see Chapter 11, “Setting Up Network Connections.”

Synchronizing data

For details about synchronizing your phone with a computer, see Chapter 4, “Transferring Information.”

Making and Receiving Calls

On your Kyocera smartphone, you can make calls in many different ways (for example, from your Address Book or from the Call History list). You can also receive pages, check voice mail, and make data connections to the Internet.

This chapter explains how to use your Kyocera smartphone as an integrated phone and message manager.

In this chapter

- Dialing calls on the keypad page 24
- Using the Dialer page 25
- Making a call from Speed Dial page 28
- Making a call from the Contacts list page 30
- Making a call from the Address Book page 31
- Redialing recent calls page 32
- Checking your own phone number page 34
- Making a conference call page 34
- Making a data connection page 35
- Answering calls page 36
- Answering calls “hands-free” page 37
- Ending calls page 38
- Adjusting sounds page 39
- Looking up information on your phone page 42
- Using power-save mode page 44
- Viewing the phone status bar page 46

Dialing calls on the keypad

To dial a call from the keypad

PHONE On

FLIP Closed

1. Extend the antenna and wait for the signal strength icon to appear.
2. Press the keys to enter the phone number.

As you dial, you can access information in your Speed Dial list and Address Book.

- **Speed Dial**—The phone automatically checks your Speed Dial list and displays the matching information. For example, if you have set up 12 as a Speed Dial number, that entry appears when you press 12. (For details on setting up Speed Dial numbers, see “Adding an entry to the Speed Dial list” on page 229.)
 - **Address Book**—As you press the digit(s), the following options appear at the bottom of the screen: Save, Find, Time Pause, and Hard Pause. To check your Address Book, roll the shuttle up until **Find** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in. All the phone numbers beginning with the digit(s) you have entered appear on the screen. Roll the shuttle up or down until the one you want to call is highlighted.
3. When you have entered or selected the correct number, press  to make the call.
 4. When you have finished your call, press .

If you make an error while dialing

1. If you press the wrong key while dialing, press  to remove the last digit you entered.
2. To remove all the digits you have entered, press and hold  or press .

Using the Dialer

When the flip is open, you can use the Dialer application as a keypad. You can press the keys in the Dialer with the stylus or with your fingers.

To place a call from the Dialer

PHONE On

FLIP Open

1. Tap the Dialer  icon.



The Dialer has two modes: minimized and full-screen.

- **Minimized**—You can see more information about the call (for example, information from the Speed Dial list) in the upper half of the screen, but the number keys do not appear. The Dialer opens in minimized mode when you receive an incoming call or message.
 - **Full-keypad**—You do not see contact information, but the number keypad is large enough to press with your fingers. The Dialer opens in expanded mode when you tap the Dialer .
2. To toggle between these two modes, do the following:
 - In the minimized Dialer, tap  to open the full-screen Dialer.
 - In the full-screen Dialer, tap  or press the shuttle in to open the minimized Dialer.
 3. If the phone is not already on, tap the Power  icon.
 4. Tap the keys either with the stylus or your finger to enter the phone number.
If you prefer, you can write the numbers to dial in the Graffiti writing area. If the phone number is in a memo or note, you can copy it and paste it into the Dialer.
 5. Tap .
 6. When you have finished your call, tap .
 7. To close the Dialer and return to the application you were previously using, tap the  icon in the lower left of the screen.

Dialer icons —full keypad screen



Left column

-  Turn the phone power on or off.
-  Switch to the minimized Dialer.
-  Return to the previous application.

Top row

-  Make a call.
-  Erase a number or clear an error.
-  End a call.

Dialer icons—minimized screen



Left column

-  Switch to the full keypad Dialer.
-  Return to the previous application.

Top row

-  Make a call.
-  Erase a number or clear an error.
-  End a call.

Bottom row

-  Turn the phone power on or off.
-  Find names from the Address Book.
-  Silence the phone.
-  Check messages.
-  Toggle speakerphone mode.

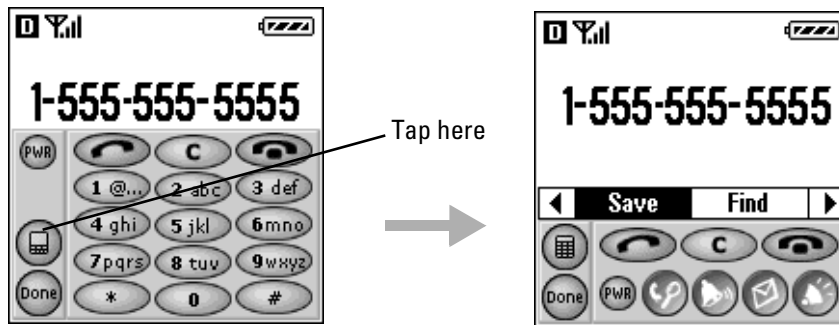
To use the Dialer with the flip-closed menus

- PHONE** On
- FLIP** Open

When you are using the Dialer, you can open the flip-closed menus.

1. Tap the Dialer  icon.

2. Tap  to view the minimized Dialer.



3. Press the shuttle in to open the menus.



4. Use the shuttle to move through the menus. Tap the icons in the Dialer with the stylus or your finger.

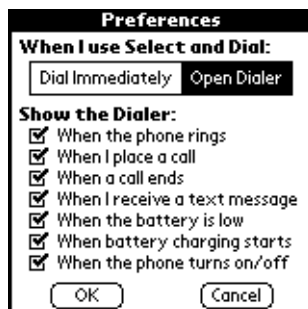
To set Dialer preferences

PHONE ➔ On

FLIP ➔ Open

You can set preferences so that the Dialer application opens automatically or places calls directly in a variety of circumstances.

1. Tap the Dialer  icon.
2. Tap  to open the Dialer menus.
3. From the Options menu, select **Preferences**.



4. Select how you want the phone to handle dialable numbers (including phone numbers, Web addresses, and email addresses) in applications.

- **Dial Immediately**—Tap this box if you want to place a call directly when you select a dialable number in any application. For example, if you select a phone number in a memo or an email message, the phone will dial that number directly, without asking for confirmation.
 - **Open Dialer**—Tap this box if you want to open the Dialer when you select a dialable number in any application. When the Dialer opens, the number you selected is already copied there. Tap  to dial it, or modify it if necessary first.
5. Tap the check boxes to indicate when you want the Dialer to appear.
For example, put a check mark beside **When a call ends** if you want the Dialer to open automatically at the end of each call. Remove the check mark if you do not want the Dialer to open in that circumstance.
 6. When you have finished, tap **OK**.

Making a call from Speed Dial

You can designate up to 199 phone numbers from your Address Book to be on your Speed Dial list. You can then call these phone numbers just by pressing the one, two, or three digit Speed Dial number (1 through 199). Because Speed Dial is linked to the Address Book, when you change a phone number in the Address Book, it is automatically updated in the Speed Dial list.

To add numbers to your Speed Dial list

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to open the Address Book.
2. Tap  to open the Address Book menus.
3. From the Options menu, tap **Launch Speed Dial**.

Speed Dial		
#	Name	Phone Number
1	Home	555-111-1111 (H)
2	Office	555-222-2222 (W)
3	Mom and Dad	555-333-3333 (H)
4	Mei, Hua	555-444-4444 (H)
5	Neighbor, Ann	555-555-5555 (F)
6	Pet Shop	pets@site.com (E)
7	Lee's school	555-777-7777 (W)
8	Jen's school	555-888-8888 (W)
9	Vendor, J. J.	555-999-9999 (W)
Dial Add Move Clear		

4. Tap **Add**.



5. Tap **Lookup**.



6. Tap the entry you want to add to the Speed Dial list. Then tap **Add**.
The entry is added to the next available Speed Dial number.

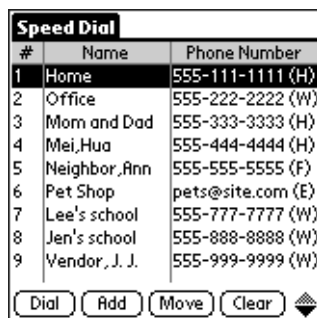
For detailed information about how to add, modify, or delete numbers from the Speed Dial list, see Chapter 14, “Speed Dial.”

To make a call from the Speed Dial list (with the flip open)

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open Speed Dial.



3. Tap to select the number you want to call.
4. Tap **Dial**.
5. When you have finished your call, tap **End**.

To make a call from the Speed Dial list (with the flip closed)

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

If you know the Speed Dial number

Press the digit(s) on the keypad. Hold down the final digit for a few seconds.

For example, if you are dialing a single-digit number, just hold down the number key for a few seconds. For a two- or three-digit number, press the first digit(s), then hold down the last digit for a few seconds. The call is placed directly.

If you need to look up the Speed Dial number

1. Press the shuttle in to open the menu.
2. Roll the shuttle down until **Contacts** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.
3. Roll the shuttle down until **Speed Dial List** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.
4. Press the shuttle up or down to scroll through the Speed Dial list. When the person you want to call is highlighted, press .
5. When you have finished your call, press .

Making a call from the Contacts list

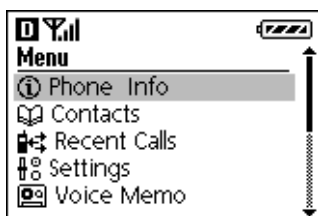
Without opening the flip, you can view the names and numbers in your Address Book and place calls using the Contacts list.

To make a call from the Contacts list

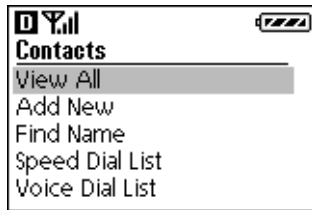
PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

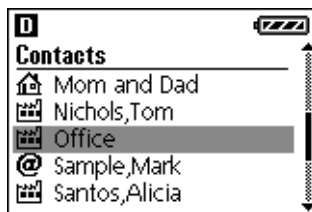
1. From the home screen, press the shuttle in to open the menu.



- Roll the shuttle down until **Contacts** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.



- With **View All** highlighted, press the shuttle in.
- Press the shuttle down to move through the list.



- When the name you want to call is highlighted, do one of the following:
 - If there is only one number for this contact, press to make the call.
 - If there are several numbers for this contact, press the shuttle in to see them all. Select the one you want to call, and then press .
- When you have finished your call, press .

Making a call from the Address Book

With the flip open, you can place calls directly from the Address Book.

To make a call from the Address Book

PHONE ➔ On

FLIP ➔ Open

- Press the Address Book key.



- Scroll through the Address List using either the up and down keys or the shuttle. Locate the person or business you want to call and do one of the following:

- If the number you want to call appears in the list, tap the phone *number* (not the name).
 - To call one of the alternate numbers for an entry, tap the ▼ in the right column. All additional numbers for this person or business appear. Tap the one you want to call. That number is moved into the Address List and becomes the primary number for the entry. Tap the number in the Address List to select it.
3. Tap  in the Dialer to place the call.

By default, the Dialer opens when you select a number from the Address Book so you can verify the number before placing the call. If you prefer, you can set the phone to place calls immediately without opening the Dialer. See “To set Dialer preferences” on page 27.
 4. When you have finished your call, tap .

Redialing recent calls

Your Kyocera smartphone provides several ways to redial numbers that you have recently called or received calls from.

Redial—With the flip either open or closed, call the most recently dialed number.

Call History—With the flip open, use the Call History application to return calls to any of the last 99 numbers you either called or received calls from. For each call, you can see the phone number, name of caller (if available), date and time of the call, and type of call (incoming, outgoing, or missed). Duplicate calls are not removed from this list.

Recent Calls list—With the flip closed, use the Recent Calls list to return calls to any of the last 30 unique numbers you either called or received calls from. Duplicate numbers are removed from this list. For each call, you can see the phone number, name of caller (if available), and the date and time of the call.

To redial the most recently called number

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ May be either open or closed

1. After the phone has acquired service, press .

A message prompts you to press  again or to speak the number you want to call (if you have set up Voice Recognition).
2. To redial the most recently called number, press  again.

To make a call from Call History

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Call History application.

Call History			▼ All
Who	When	Length	
Home	9/28	04:02	📞
Home	9/28	09:45	📞
Mom and Dad	9/28	14:03	📞
Unknown	9/28	00:00	📞
Manning, P. R.	9/26	08:28	📞
Parsons, B.	9/17	02:52	📞
5551234	9/16	01:30	📞
5552345	9/13	05:21	📞
Jen's school	9/13	10:15	📞
Vendor, J. J.	9/13	01:08	📞
Sample, Mark	9/13	03:16	📞

Tap here to view all calls, incoming calls only, outgoing calls only, or missed calls only.

Tap the phone icon to return the call.

3. To display a specific type of call, tap the ▼ in the upper-right corner of the screen. From the pick list, select **Incoming**, **Outgoing**, or **Missed**. To see all your calls, select **All** from the pick list.
4. Scroll through the calls using the scroll bar on the right, the up and down keys, or the shuttle. When you find the call you want to return, tap the phone icon beside it.
5. When you have finished your call, tap .

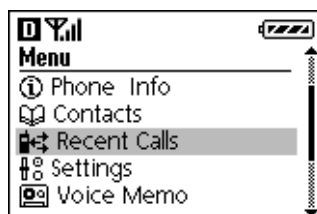
For detailed information, see Chapter 6—Call History and the Recent Calls List.

To make a call from the Recent Calls list

PHONE ➤ On

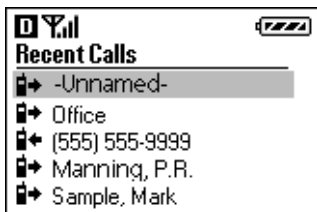
FLIP ➤ Closed

1. From the home screen, press the shuttle in to open the menus.



2. Roll the shuttle down until **Recent Calls** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.

The Recent Calls list appears. This list contains the 30 most recent phone numbers for both incoming and outgoing calls. Duplicate numbers are removed.



3. Roll the shuttle up or down to move through the list. When the number you want to call is highlighted, press  once to make the call.
4. To add a number from the Recent Calls list to your Address Book, highlight the number and press the shuttle in. Save and Exit appear at the bottom of the screen. Roll the shuttle up or down until **Save** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in. You see a message that the number has been saved in your Address Book. Open the flip to edit the Address Book entry.
5. When you have finished your call, press .

Checking your own phone number

To check your own phone number

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

1. From the home screen, press the shuttle in. The screen displays information about your Kyocera smartphone, including your phone number.
2. To exit the screen, press .

Making a conference call

If your service provider supports conference calls, you can use your phone to make a three-way call.

To make a conference call

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

1. Call the first conference participant.
2. After you have been connected to the first participant, press .
3. Enter the phone number of the second participant and press  again.

To make a conference call from the Address Book

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

Follow these steps to make conference calls from the Address Book or other third-party applications.

1. Press  first.
2. Open the flip and launch the application.
3. Select the number you want to call.
4. Press  twice.
5. Once the second participant is connected, press  again.

Making a data connection

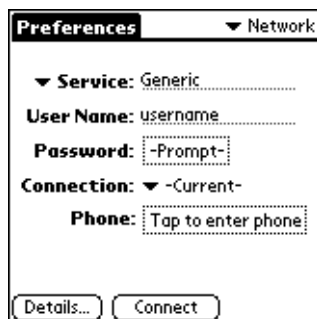
You can use your Kyocera smartphone to connect to Internet Service Providers (ISPs) or remote access servers. For details about setting up these services, see “Entering network settings” on page 173. Once they have been set up, follow these procedures to make a data connection.

To make a data connection

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Preferences screen.
3. From the pick list in the upper-right corner, select **Network**.



4. Verify that the settings on the screen are correct. Tap **Connect**.
The phone connects to your service provider.

Answering calls

When you receive an incoming call, the phone rings, the backlight turns on, and the message “Incoming Call” appears on the screen. If available, caller information from the Address Book also appears.

You can answer a call with the keypad open or closed. If you are working with an application (for example, entering addresses), your entries are not lost when you answer the phone. If you have set up Auto Answer or Voice Answer, you can answer calls using your voice alone, without touching the phone.

To answer a call

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ May be either open or closed

1. If the flip is closed, press .

Pressing  always answers the call, even if the keypad is locked. Opening or closing the keypad does not have any effect on the call.

2. If the flip is open, press the shuttle in to open the Dialer. Then tap .

NOTE: If you have set the ringer to a long tone, the phone may continue to ring for a moment or two after you press Send. Don't press Send again. The call will be answered at the end of the ring.

If a second call comes in

If a second call comes in while you are on the phone, the phone does not ring. A tone announces the new call so you can place the current caller on hold, if you wish. The second call is automatically added to the Call History list, whether you answer it or not. Call waiting and messaging services vary depending on your service provider; contact your service provider for information.

To put a caller on hold

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

1. To put a caller on hold, press .
2. To move between two callers, press  again.

Answering calls “hands-free”

You can answer calls using your voice alone, without touching the phone. This capability is particularly useful when the phone is in a hands-free car kit, but can be used at other times as well. You can choose from the following options:

- Auto Answer** All calls are answered automatically after about 5 seconds. It does not matter whether the phone is in a car kit or not.
- Auto Answer (HFK only)** All calls are answered automatically after about 5 seconds only if the phone is in a hands-free car kit.
- Voice Answer** After one ring, a voice prompt asks you whether you want to answer the phone or not. If you answer “Yes,” the call is answered. If you answer “No,” the call is sent to your voice mail. To use this method, the phone must be attached to a hands-free car kit, the sync cradle, or other powered accessory.

To set up and use Auto Answer

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to display the last Preferences screen you used.
3. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner and select **Phone**.



4. Tap the ▼ beside **Auto Answer** and select one of the following:
 - On** Answer all incoming calls after approximately five seconds.
 - HFK only** Answer incoming calls after approximately five seconds only if the phone is in a hands-free car kit.

Once you have selected one of these methods, Auto Answer is in effect.

When you receive a call—The phone rings once and then puts the call through. If you selected On, all calls are handled in this way. If you selected HFK only, calls are not answered automatically unless the phone is in the hands-free car kit. Note that setting overrides other settings, such as Voice Answer.

To set up and use Voice Answer

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

1. Press the shuttle in to open the menu.
2. Roll the shuttle down until **Settings** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.
3. Roll the shuttle down until **Sounds** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.
4. Roll the shuttle down until **Voice Answer** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.
5. Select **Enabled** to turn on Voice Answer.
6. Press **C** to back up to the previous menu or press  to return to the home screen.

Once you have selected this method, Voice Answer is in effect any time the phone is attached to a powered accessory, such as the hands-free car kit.

When you receive a call—After one ring, a voice prompt asks you whether you want to answer the phone or not. To accept the call, answer “Yes.” To send the call to your voice mail, answer “No.”

NOTE If you have enabled both Auto Answer and Voice Answer, Auto Answer overrides the other setting. Calls are answered directly without the voice prompt.

Ending calls

To end a call

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ May be either open or closed

If the flip is closed, press .

If the flip is open, tap  or  in the Dialer.

The length of the call in minutes and seconds appears on the screen for about ten seconds. To clear this information, press **C** if the flip is closed or  if the flip is open.

Adjusting sounds

It is easy to adjust the speaker volume, set the microphone to mute, or turn off the ringer on your Kyocera smartphone.

You can adjust the volume of the ringer or set your phone to blink or vibrate instead of ringing when you have an incoming call. For example, if you want to silence the ringer while you are in a meeting, you can quickly do so using either the Silence Sounds key with the keypad closed or the Preferences screen with the flip open.

With the flip open, you can make many adjustments to the sounds using the Sounds Preferences screen. You can adjust the phone ringer separately from alert beeps or other sounds. For example, if you have set an alert for a Date Book event, the phone will beep at the scheduled time, even if the phone ringer is turned off.

To adjust the speaker volume

PHONE ➤ On, with a call in progress

FLIP ➤ May be either open or closed

Press the shuttle up or down during a call.

To mute the microphone during a call

PHONE ➤ On, with a call in progress

FLIP ➤ Closed

During a call, the word **Options** appears in the menu bar at the bottom of the screen.

1. Press the shuttle in to display the menu.
There are only three options in the menu when a call is in progress—Phone Info, Volume, and Mute/Unmute.
2. Roll the shuttle up or down to move through the options. When **Mute** is highlighted, press the shuttle in.
The other party does not hear anything you say until you unmute the microphone. The Mute option at the bottom of the screen changes to Unmute.
3. To unmute the microphone, press the shuttle in when **Unmute** is highlighted.

To put the phone in Speakerphone mode

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ May be either open or closed

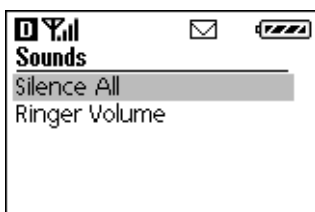
1. If the flip is closed, press the Speakerphone  key.
If the flip is open, tap the Speakerphone  icon in the minimized Dialer.
2. To turn Speakerphone mode off, press the Speakerphone  key or tap the Speakerphone  icon again.

To silence the ringer

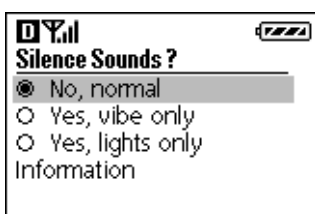
PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

1. Press the Silence Sounds  key.



2. Press the shuttle in to select **Silence All**.



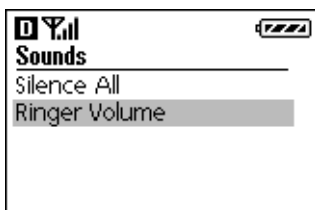
3. Press the shuttle up or down to scroll through the choices.
 - **No, normal**—The phone rings when you receive a call.
 - **Yes, vibrate only**—The ringer and all alert sounds are turned off. The phone vibrates when you receive a call.
 - **Yes, lights only**—The ringer and all alert sounds are turned off. The lights on the phone flash when you receive a call.
4. When the mode you want to choose is highlighted, press the shuttle in.

To adjust the ringer volume

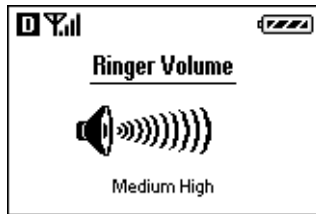
PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

1. Press the Silence Sounds  key.



2. Press the shuttle down to scroll to **Ringer Volume**. When Ringer Volume is highlighted, press the shuttle in.



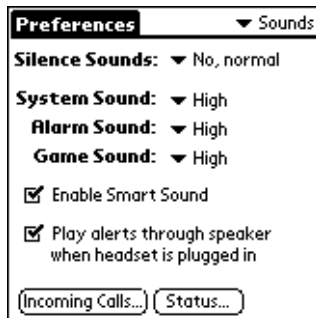
3. Press the shuttle up or down to adjust the volume. You hear a sample of the ringer at each level.

To adjust sound preferences

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to display the last Preferences screen you used.
3. From the pick list in the upper-right corner, tap **Sounds**.



4. Tap the ▼ beside Silence Sounds and select one of the options:
 - **No, normal**—The phone rings when you receive a call.
 - **Yes, vibe only**—The ringer is silent. The phone vibrates when you receive a call.
 - **Yes, lights only**—The ringer is silent. The lights on the phone flash when you receive a call.

Note that this setting affects the phone ringer only; it does not turn off alert beeps from the organizer.

5. If you also want to turn off or adjust the system, alarm, or game sounds, tap the ▼ beside each sound you want to adjust and select **High**, **Medium**, **Low**, or **Off**.
6. When you have finished, tap **Done**.

Looking up information on your phone

After using your phone for a while, you may have a large amount of information stored on it. There are several ways to search through this information, locate names or numbers, and place phone calls. You can do any of the following:

- Find and dial a number by entering all or part of the contact or company name
- Find and dial a number by entering the first few digits
- Find text in any application and (if it includes a dialable number) place a call directly from the application
- Find a contact in the Address Book and paste the phone number into another application

To find and dial contacts by name

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

Using this method, you can look up and dial phone numbers by entering a few letters of a contact's first name, last name, or company name on the keypad.

1. Press the Find Name  key.
2. Using the keypad, press the first letter of the name you are searching for.
For example, the 2 key is equivalent to A, B, or C. If you press the 2 key once, the letter A appears in the Find window. If you press the 2 key twice, the letter B appears.
3. Wait a moment. The cursor moves one position to the right.
4. Press the key for the second letter of the name you are searching for. Enter as many letters as you wish.

NOTE: If you enter just one letter, the phone searches for all entries in which the first name, last name, or company name starts with that letter. If you enter two or more letters, the phone searches for all entries containing those letters in the first name, last name, or company name field.

5. To search for the name you have entered, press the shuttle in.
Matching names from your Address Book appear on the screen. Roll the shuttle up or down to scroll through the names.
6. When the contact you want to call is highlighted, press the shuttle in.

To find and dial contacts by number

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

Using this method, you can look up and dial numbers by entering the first few digits of the phone number on the keypad.

1. Using the keypad, press the first few digit(s) of a number.
2. Roll the shuttle down until **Find** is highlighted in the bar at the bottom of the screen. Then press the shuttle in.

All the entries in your Address Book whose phone numbers begin with those digits appear on the screen.

3. Roll the shuttle up or down until the name you want to call is highlighted
4. Press  to make the call.
To cancel without making the call, press  or .

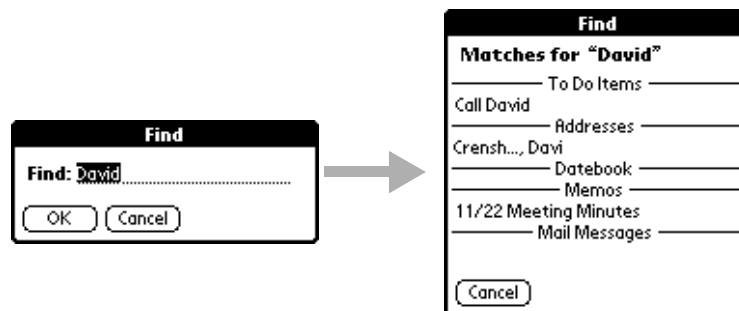
To find text in any application

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

Using this method, you can search for any text in any application, including the notes attached to Date Book or Address Book entries. You can search for whole words or just the beginning letters of a word.

1. Tap the  icon from any application.
If you select text in an application before you tap , the selected text automatically appears in the Find dialog.
2. Enter the text that you want to find. Notice that the Find command is *not* case-sensitive.
3. Tap **OK** to display a list of all instances of the text that you specified.



NOTE: You can stop the search at any time by tapping the Stop button (for example, if the entry you want appears before the search has finished). To resume the search, tap the Find More button.

4. Tap the text you want to review to display the selected entry and its corresponding application on the screen.

5. To copy the text into another application, use the Copy and Paste commands from the Edit menu.

To look up and insert a phone number into another application

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

Using the Phone Lookup command, you can search for a phone number and paste it directly into an application. For example, if you want to include a phone number in a memo, you can use Phone Lookup to find the phone number and transfer it directly to the memo.

NOTE You can use the Graffiti Command stroke /L to open Phone Lookup while entering text. For example, to insert the phone number of Joe Williams in a memo you are writing, write Wi, followed by /L. If you have only one entry beginning with Wi, the phone inserts the phone number immediately. If you have more than one name beginning with Wi, the Phone Lookup screen appears so you can select the correct one.

1. Open the entry where you want to insert a phone number.

This can be an event in the Date Book, a To Do item, or a memo. Phone Lookup is not available in the Address Book or the Expense application.

2. Tap  to open the menus for your application.
3. From the Options menu, tap **Phone Lookup**.



4. Tap the phone number you want to use.

NOTE: To find a number more quickly, enter the first letter or two of the name you want to find in the Look Up line at the bottom of the screen. The list scrolls to the first name starting with that letter.

5. Tap **Add** to paste the name and number into the entry selected in step 1.

Using power-save mode

Since your Kyocera smartphone is both a phone and a connected organizer, you may sometimes want to save power by turning off features you do not plan to use. For example, you can use applications such as the Address Book or the Date Book

without turning on the phone if you don't plan to make or receive any calls. On the other hand, you may want to turn off the organizer to extend the battery life, while leaving your phone turned on to receive calls.

Normally, the organizer applications on your phone are never completely "off" even when you are not using them. This feature allows the applications to "wake up" immediately when you open the flip, but it draws a small amount of battery power at all times. The power-save mode puts the connected organizer to "sleep" so that it is not drawing energy from the battery.

Another benefit of power-save mode is that it automatically engages Keyguard. If you leave your phone turned on when it is inside a purse or briefcase, Keyguard prevents accidental keypresses from initiating calls.

To turn power-save mode on or off

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

1. To turn off the organizer, press  again, followed by the backlight key. The LED slowly flashes to show that the phone is in power-save mode. If you get an incoming call while the phone is in power-save mode, the phone rings and you can answer it as usual. Keyguard is disabled for the duration of the call.
2. To take the phone out of power-save mode at any time, do one of the following:
 - Open and close the flip.
 - Press the backlight button.
 - Press , then press 1, 2, 3.

Power modes

This chart summarizes the power modes of the Kyocera smartphone.

Mode	Phone is...	Organizer is...	To put the phone in this mode	To take the phone out of this mode
OFF	Off	Off	Press  for 2 seconds until "Powering Off" appears on the screen. Keep the flip closed.	To turn on the phone, press  for 2 seconds until you hear a beep. Open or close the flip to turn the organizer on or off.
Organizer only	Off	On	Press  for 2 seconds until "Powering Off" appears on the screen. Open the flip.	To turn on the phone, press  for 2 seconds until you hear a beep. Open or close the flip to turn the organizer on or off.
Power-save or sleep	On	Off	To turn on the phone, press  for 2 seconds until you hear a beep. To turn off the organizer, press the backlight key.	Press  for 2 seconds until "Powering Off" appears on the screen. Open or close the flip to turn the organizer on or off.
ON	On	On	To turn on the phone, press  for 2 seconds until you hear a beep. To turn on the organizer, open the flip.	Press  for 2 seconds until "Powering Off" appears on the screen. Open or close the flip to turn the organizer on or off.

Viewing the phone status bar

The row of icons across the top of the Kyocera smartphone screen is the phone status bar. These icons provide information on the phone power, battery power, and signal strength, among other indicators.

The status bar is normally visible only when the flip is closed. When you open the flip, it disappears.

However, you may sometimes want to see the phone status bar while the flip is open. For example, if you are about to make a call from the Address Book, you may want to verify that you have a strong signal.

To view the status bar (with the flip open)

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. From any application except the Dialer, press the shuttle in.

Icons showing the phone's current state appear across the top of the screen. For example, the icons below indicate that the phone is in digital mode with full signal power, and the battery is fully charged. For details about the icons in the status bar, see "Status indicators" on page 18.



2. To remove the status bar, press the shuttle in again.

Using the Organizer

Record keeping on the go challenges even the most organized person. Your Kyocera smartphone includes the organizer to help you maintain information about the people, places, and events in your life. All it takes is a tap to ensure that information you enter is up-to-date and available in two places when you synchronize your Kyocera smartphone with your computer.

This chapter explains how to work with the built-in applications, enter information, install applications, and use organizer features.

In this chapter

- Selecting applications page 49
- Entering information page 51
- Using application controls page 59
- Using menus page 59
- Choosing fonts page 61
- Using categories page 62
- Attaching notes page 65
- Marking private entries page 66
- Installing applications page 66
- Removing applications from the phone page 69
- Removing the Desktop software page 69

Selecting applications

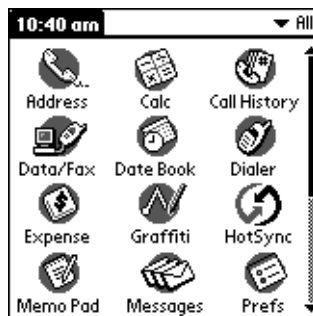
The Kyocera smartphone comes with a variety of applications that you can open from the Applications Launcher. You can also use the buttons surrounding and below the writing area to open applications.

To open an application

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.



Tap the scroll bar or press the Down button to see additional applications.

2. Tap the icon for the application you want to launch.

If you have more applications installed than you can see on one screen, tap the scroll bar or press the Down button to move between screens.

NOTE: As a shortcut, you can write the Graffiti handwriting character for the first letter of an application you want to open. The Applications Launcher scrolls to the first application beginning with that letter.

Changing applications

When working in any application, tap  or press a key to switch to another application. The phone automatically saves your work when you change from one application to another, so you don't need to worry about losing information.

Displaying applications

By default, the Applications Launcher displays each application as an icon. If you prefer, you can display applications as a list of names.

You can also put the applications into categories so they are easier to see. For example, you could put all the phone applications into a category called Phone. After assigning applications to categories, you can choose to look at a single category or to see all your applications.

To list applications by name

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher menus.
3. From the Options menu, tap **Preferences**.



4. In the View By pick list, tap **List**.
5. Tap **OK** to view the Applications Launcher in list format.

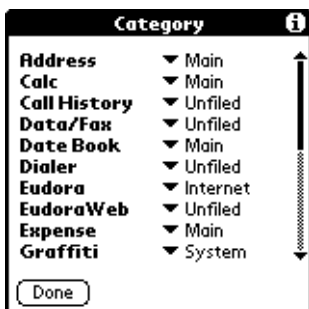


To display applications by category

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Applications menus.
3. From the App menu, tap **Category**.



4. Tap the ▼ next to each application to assign it to a category.

NOTE: You can create your own categories. Tap Edit Category in the pick list. In the Edit Categories dialog, tap New and enter the category name. Tap OK to add the category. Tap OK again to close the dialog.

5. Tap **Done** to return to the Applications Launcher.
6. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner of the screen. From the pick list, tap the application category you want to see.

You can also tap  to scroll through the application categories.

Entering information

There are two ways to enter information into your phone. You can use the on-screen keyboard or you can write in the Graffiti area. Both of these methods use the stylus.

Using the on-screen keyboard

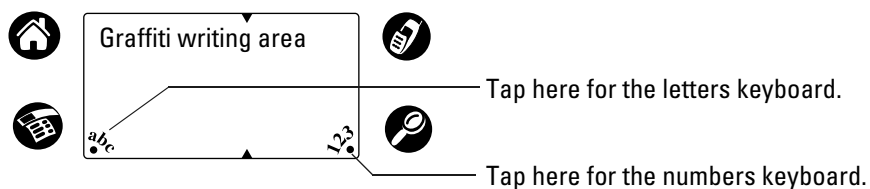
You can activate the on-screen keyboard any time you need to enter text or numbers.

To enter text with the on-screen keyboard

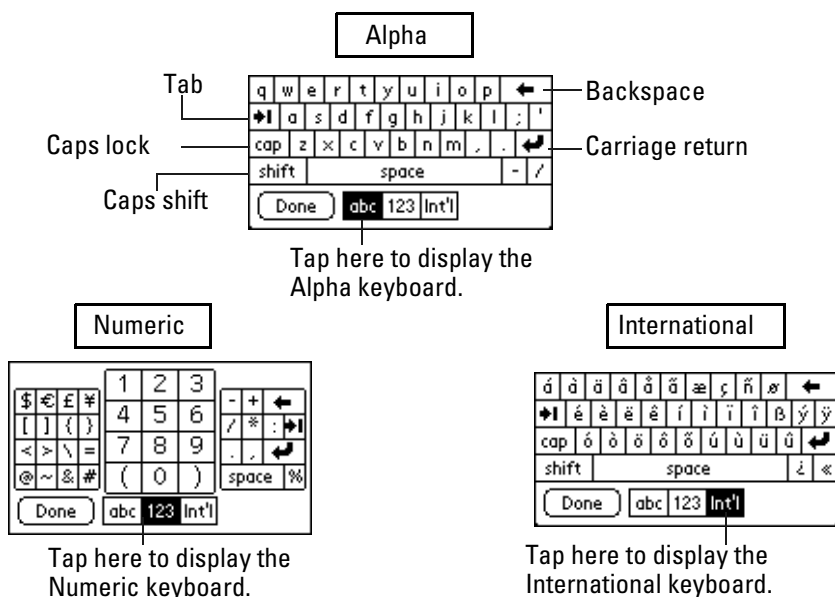
PHONE May be either on or off

FLIP Open

1. Open any application.
2. Tap any record name or tap **New**.
3. Tap abc to open the alphabetic keyboard or 123 to open the numeric keyboard.



- Tap the characters of the on-screen keyboard to enter text and numbers.



Notice that the on-screen keyboard also has a screen for international characters. You can move among the three screens at any time.

- When you have finished, tap Done to close the on-screen keyboard.

Writing with the stylus

The Kyocera smartphone includes Graffiti power writing software as the primary system for entering text and numbers. In Graffiti, the simple strokes you write with the stylus are instantly recognized as letters or numbers.

The Memo Pad application is ideal for practicing Graffiti script. This section explains how to open the Memo Pad and use it to practice Graffiti.

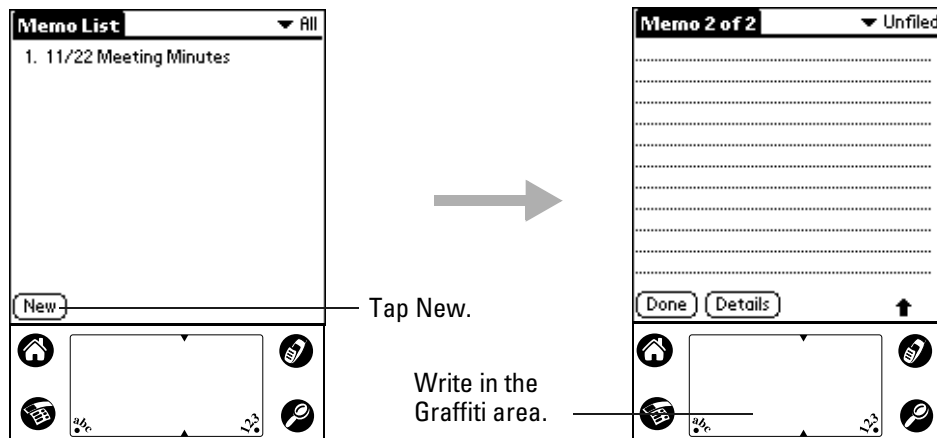
To open the Memo Pad application

PHONE May be either on or off

FLIP Open

- Press the Memo Pad  key to open the Memo Pad.

2. Tap **New** to open a new Memo page.



Writing letters with Graffiti

Graffiti includes any character you can type on a standard keyboard. Because the Graffiti strokes closely resemble those of the regular alphabet, most people find they can enter text quickly and accurately with only minutes of practice.

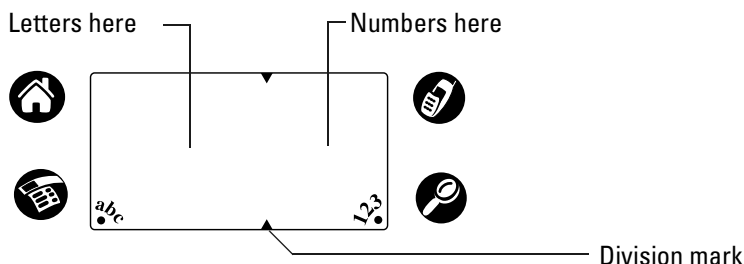
A A F F K K T T
4 4 5 5

There are four basic concepts for success with Graffiti:

- If you draw the character shape exactly as shown in the tables in this chapter, you can achieve 100% accuracy.



- The heavy dot on each shape shows where to begin the stroke. Certain characters have similar shapes, but different beginning and end points. Always begin the stroke at the heavy dot.
- Most characters require only a single stroke. When you lift the stylus, the text character is displayed immediately.
- The Graffiti writing area is divided into two parts: one for writing letters and one for writing numbers. The small marks at the top and bottom of the Graffiti writing area indicate the two areas.



To write letters of the alphabet with Graffiti

1. Tap the screen where you want your text to go.
2. Use the table on page 55 to find the stroke shape for the letter you want to write. For example, the stroke below creates the letter “n.”



You use the same shapes to create both upper- and lowercase letters.

3. Position the stylus on the left side of the Graffiti writing area.
4. Start at the heavy dot. Draw the shape as it appears in the table. Don't try to draw the dot itself. The dot is there to show the starting point.
5. Lift the stylus from the screen at the end of the stroke shape. When you lift the stylus from the screen, the letter appears at the insertion point. You can immediately begin the stroke for the next character.

NOTE: You must begin the character strokes in the Graffiti writing area. If you do not make Graffiti strokes in the Graffiti writing area, the phone does not recognize them as text characters.

Graffiti tips

When writing with Graffiti, keep these tips in mind:

- Accuracy improves when you write large characters. Draw strokes that nearly fill the Graffiti writing area.
- To delete characters, place the insertion point to the right of the character you want to delete and make the backspace stroke (a line from right to left) in the Graffiti writing area.
- Write at natural speed. Writing too slowly can cause recognition errors.
- Do not write on a slant. Vertical strokes should be parallel to the sides of the Graffiti writing area.
- For some letters, there are two different stroke shapes. Use the one that's easiest for you.
- If you forget a stroke, a full-screen pen stroke from bottom to top will open Graffiti Help. Place the stylus in the Graffiti writing area and drag it to the top of the screen.

Graffiti script

To enter...	Draw	To enter...	Draw	To enter...	Draw
A		N		0	
B		O		1	
C		P		2	
D		Q		3	
E		R		4	
F		S		5	
G		T		6	
H		U		7	
I		V		8	
J		W		9	
K		X		Space	
L		Y		Back Space	
M		Z		Next Line	

Writing capital letters with Graffiti

You make capital letters with the same stroke shapes as the basic alphabet characters. To make capital letters, you must first “shift” to caps — just as you press the Shift key on a keyboard — and then write the character strokes. When you start a new entry (for example, a new memo or a new Address Book entry), Graffiti automatically capitalizes the first letter.

To make the first letter of a word a capital letter:

- Write the Caps Shift stroke.

When Caps Shift is active, an arrow appears in the lower-right corner of the screen. Caps Shift is only active for the first character.

[Details](#)

To enter only capital letters (Caps Lock):

Write the Caps Lock stroke.

When Caps Lock is active, an underlined arrow appears in the lower-right corner of the screen. To return to lowercase, make the Caps Shift stroke again.

[Details](#)

Writing numbers with Graffiti

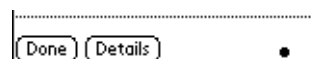
Writing numbers with Graffiti is similar to writing the letters of the alphabet, except that you make the character strokes on the right side of the Graffiti writing area.

Number	Strokes	Number	Strokes
0		5	
1		6	
2		7	
3		8	
4		9	

Writing punctuation marks with Graffiti

Graffiti can create any punctuation mark you can enter from a keyboard.

All punctuation marks begin with a single tap on the Graffiti writing area. When you make this tap, a dot appears to show that Punctuation Shift is active. The next stroke you make with the stylus creates a punctuation mark.



Period	Comma	Apostrophe	?	!	-	(	)	/	\$

@	#	%	^	&	*	<	>	-	+	=		Tab

\	{	}	[	]	~	`	;	:	"

When Punctuation Shift is active, you can make a symbol stroke anywhere in the Graffiti writing area (the letters *or* numbers side).

Writing symbols and extended characters

All symbols and extended characters begin with the Symbol Shift stroke.

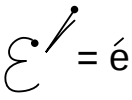
When the Symbol Shift is active, a slanted shift symbol appears in the lower-right corner of the screen. The next stroke you make creates the symbol or extended character.



•	™	®	©	‘	’	“	”	§	°	¿	¡	+
•	ℳ	℞	©	┌	┐	ℵ	ℶ	ℷ	ℸ	ℹ	℺	℻

—	×	÷	=	¢	€	¥	£	β	μ	f	ø
—	×	÷	=	¢	€	¥	£	β	μ	f	ø

Writing accented characters

 = é To create accented characters, draw the stroke normally used to create the letter, followed by an accent stroke. Graffiti then adds the accent to the letter. This example shows the strokes required to draw an “e” with an acute accent.

Accent strokes


 Using these accent strokes, you can write the following accented letters:
 à á â ã ä å è é ê ë ì í î ï ò ó ô õ ö ù ú û ü ñ ÿ

Additional non-English characters

You can write the following characters in the lowercase alphabet mode without any special punctuation or shifting:

ç	æ
ç	æ

You must write these non-English characters in the left side of the Graffiti writing area.

Navigation strokes

In addition to character symbols, Graffiti includes special strokes that you can use to navigate within text or fields in applications.

Command	Stroke
Move cursor right	
Move cursor left	
Previous field (Address Book only)	
Next Field (Address Book only)	
Open Address Record (Address Book only)	

Graffiti ShortCuts

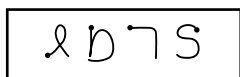
Graffiti ShortCuts make entering commonly used words or phrases quick and easy. Graffiti comes with several predefined ShortCuts, and you can also create your own. Each ShortCut can represent up to 45 characters. For example, you might create a ShortCut for your name or for the header of a memo. See Chapter 12—Setting Preferences to learn about creating your own ShortCuts.

To use a ShortCut, draw the ShortCut stroke  followed by the ShortCut characters. When you draw the ShortCut stroke, the ShortCut symbol appears at the insertion point to show that you are in ShortCut mode.

The phone includes the following predefined Graffiti ShortCuts:

Entry	ShortCut
Date stamp	ds
Time stamp	ts
Date / time stamp	dts
Meeting	me

Entry	ShortCut
Breakfast	br
Lunch	lu
Dinner	di



For example, draw these strokes to enter the date and time.

Using application controls

The applications on your Kyocera smartphone use standard controls for moving around the screen. Once you become familiar with them, you can easily select options and navigate through applications. The following table lists the controls and how to use them.



Check box—Tap an empty check box to select that option. Tap it again to remove the check mark.



Scroll arrows—Tap the up arrow to display the previous page. Tap the down arrow to display the next page. You can also press the up and down scroll keys on the front panel of the phone.



Pick list—Tap the arrow to display a list of choices. From the pick list, tap an item to select it.



Button—Tap a button to perform a command. In most cases, tapping a button opens or closes a dialog, a screen where you enter information or change settings. A dialog always contains an OK, Cancel, or Done button for closing the dialog. The on-screen keyboard is an example of a dialog.



Scroll bar—Drag the slider to scroll the display one line at a time. To scroll to the previous page, tap the arrow at the top of the scroll bar. To scroll to the next page, tap the arrow at the bottom of the scroll bar.

Using menus

A menu is a set of commands for actions you can do, such as creating a new record or beaming a business card. You open the menus on your phone by tapping the menu icon .

Some menu commands are common to all applications. Others are specific to the application you are using. (For example, menus in the Memo Pad have different options than those in the Date Book). The common menu commands are described in this section. For details about the menus in an application, see the chapter on that application.

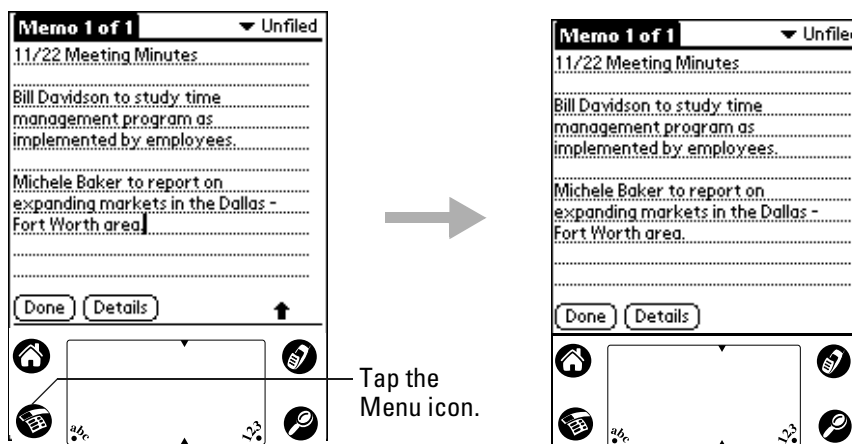
To open the menus

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Open an application (such as the Memo Pad).

2. Tap  to open the menus for that application.



In this example, there are three menus—Record, Edit, and Options. The Record menu, which is open, contains three commands—New Memo, Delete Memo, and Beam Memo.

Choosing a menu

After you open the menus for an application, tap the menu that contains the command you want to use.

The menus and menu commands you can see depend not only on the application that is running, but also on *which part* of the application is currently on the screen. For example, in the Memo Pad, the menus for the Memo List screen are different from those for the Memo screen.

Using Graffiti Shortcut commands

Most menu commands have Graffiti “Command stroke” equivalents (like the keyboard shortcuts on computers). The command letters appear on the right side of the menu commands.

Menu commands	Edit	
	Undo	✓U
	Cut	✓X
	Copy	✓C
	Paste	✓P
	Select All	✓S
	Keyboard	✓K
	Graffiti Help	✓G

To use the Graffiti menu commands, draw the Command stroke  followed by the command letter. The Command symbol appears just above the Graffiti writing area to indicate that you are in Command mode. For example, to choose the Select All command, draw the Command stroke, followed by the letter “s.”

NOTE You do not need to tap  before you use the Graffiti menu commands. However, since the Command mode is active for approximately two seconds, you must write the letter immediately after drawing the command stroke to activate the menu command.

Using the Edit menu

The Edit menu is available with any screen where you enter or edit text. In general, these commands apply to text that you *select* in an application.

To select text in an application

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap the beginning of the text that you want to select.
2. Drag the stylus over the text to highlight it (in black). Drag *across* the text to select additional words, or drag *down* to select a group of lines.

The following commands may appear in an Edit menu:

Undo	Reverses the action of the <i>last</i> Edit command. For example, if you used Cut to remove text, the Undo command replaces the text.
Cut	Removes text and stores it in memory. You can paste this text into another area of the application or into a different application.
Copy	Copies text and stores it temporarily in memory. You can paste this text into another area or into a different application.
Paste	Inserts text you cut or copied at the selected point. If you did not previously cut or copy text, the Paste command does nothing.
Select All	Selects all the text on the current record or screen. Use this command to cut or copy all of the text and paste it elsewhere.
Keyboard	Opens the on-screen keyboard.
Graffiti Help	Shows the Graffiti character strokes. Use this command any time you forget the stroke for a particular character.

Choosing fonts

In most applications, you can change the font style to make the text on the screen easier to read. You can even choose a different font style for each application that supports this feature.

Notice that the Expense application does not support changing fonts.

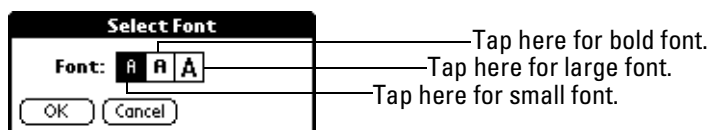
To change the font style

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

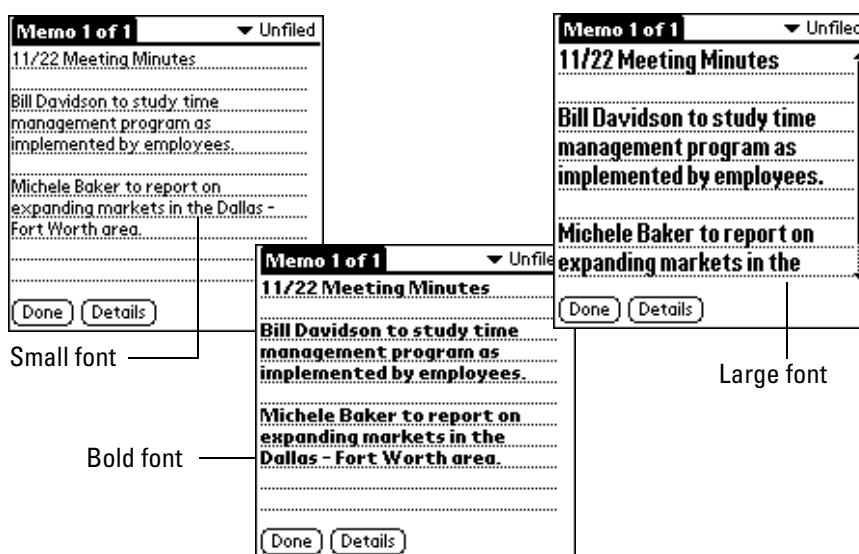
FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.

2. Open an application.
3. Tap  to open the menus.
4. Tap Font from the Options menu.



5. Tap the font style you want to use.
6. Tap OK to return to the application. The font style has changed.



Using categories

Categories can help you group Address entries, To Do items, or Memos for easy review. You cannot, however, assign categories to Date Book events. When you first create an entry, it is "Unfiled," which means it does not belong to a category. You can leave it Unfiled or assign it to a category at any time.

The use of categories is optional. The category you choose is used only for sorting and viewing records. It does not affect the contents of the record.

To assign a category to an entry

PHONE ➔ May be either on or off

FLIP ➔ Open

1. Open the Address Book, To Do List, or Memo Pad.
2. Tap the entry you want to place in a category. Tap **Edit**.
3. Tap **Details**.

- From the Category pick list, tap the category you want to assign.



- Tap OK.

Viewing lists by category

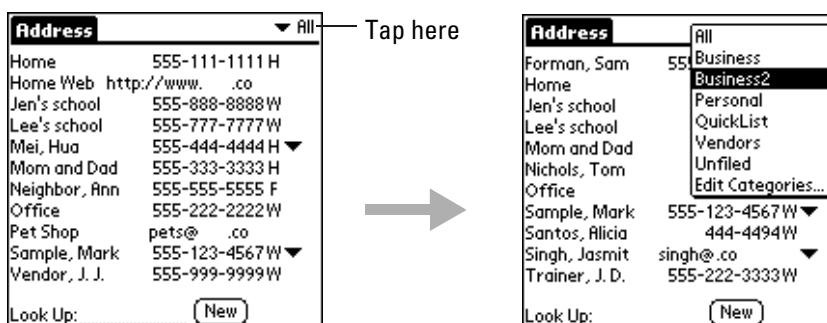
After you have assigned categories to your entries, you can easily view the entries by category. Viewing by category is particularly useful in applications such as the Address Book where you may have a long list of records.

To use categories in a List screen

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

- Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
- Open the application you want to view.
- Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner of the screen.



- Tap the category of entries you want to view. The List screen now shows only records in that category.
- To return to a complete list of your entries, open the pick list in the upper-right corner of the screen and tap All.

Creating a new category

The Kyocera smartphone comes with two default categories: Business and Personal. The Address Book also includes the QuickList category, which contains commonly used names, addresses, and phone numbers.

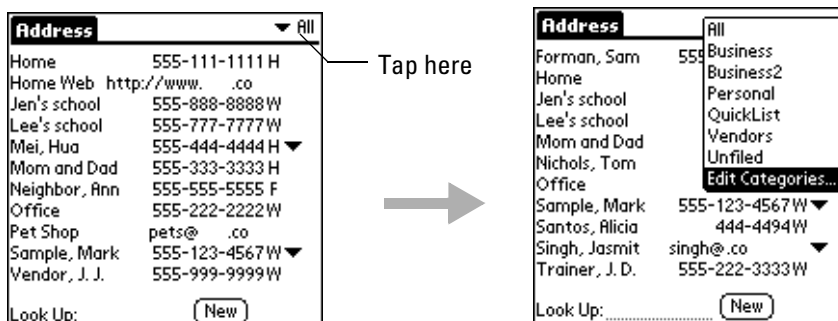
You can rename the default categories or add new categories to suit your needs. You can define up to 15 categories for each application.

To create a new Address Book category

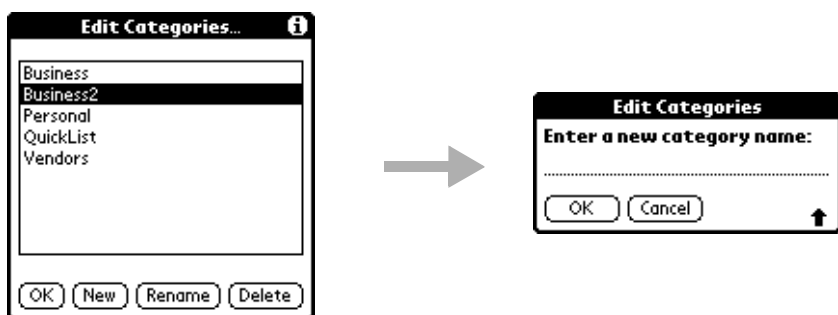
PHONE May be either on or off

FLIP Open

1. Press the Address Book  key.
2. Tap the ▼ in the upper-right corner of the screen. Tap **Edit Categories**.



3. In the Edit Categories dialog, tap **New**.



4. Enter the name of the new category. Tap **OK**.
5. Tap **OK**. Your new category has been added to the pick list.
Edit any of your records and file them in the new category as appropriate.

Renaming categories

You can change the name of any existing category.

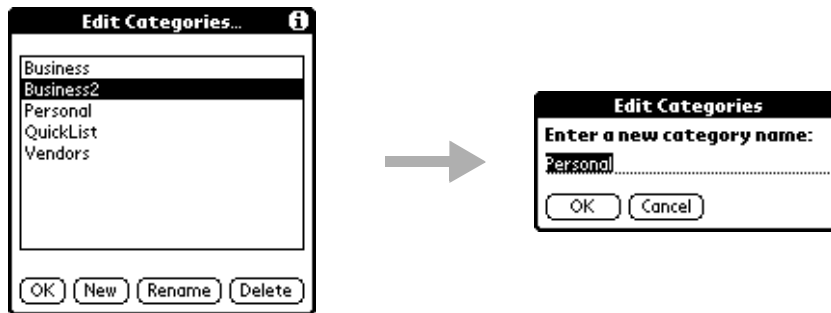
To change the name of an Address Book category

PHONE May be either on or off

FLIP Open

1. Press the Address Book  key.

2. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner of the screen. Tap **Edit Categories**.



3. Tap the category you want to rename. Tap **Rename**.
4. Enter the new name you want to assign to the category. Tap **OK**.
5. Tap **OK**. The new name appears in the pick list.

NOTE: You can “merge” two or more categories by assigning them the same name. For example, if you change the name of the “Personal” category to “Business,” all entries formerly in the Personal category appear in the Business category.

Attaching notes

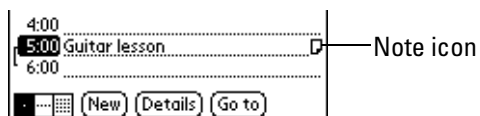
You can attach notes to entries in most applications (except the Memo Pad). A note is anything you want to write. For example, if you have entered an appointment in the Date Book, you could attach a note with directions to the location. A note can be several thousand characters in length.

To attach a note to an entry

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Open the application and display the entry where you want to add a note.
2. Tap **Details**.
3. Tap **Note**. Write the text you want to appear in the note.
4. Tap **Done** to close the note and return to the application screen.



Notice that  appears at the right side of any item with a note attached.

5. To review or edit a note, tap .

Marking private entries

In applications, you can mark individual entries as Private. Private entries remain visible and accessible in the organizer until you change the Security setting to hide all Private entries. You can also restrict phone calls to private entries. See “Showing or hiding private entries” on page 223 for complete information about how to use the Security settings.

To mark an entry as private

PHONE May be either on or off

FLIP Open

1. Display the entry that you want to make private.
2. Tap **Details**.
3. Tap the Private check box.

Installing applications

Your phone comes with many applications installed. You can also install additional applications, including games and programs that are available for downloading from the Internet. There are many third-party applications (called .PRC files) available for Palm connected organizers.

The Palm Install Tool makes it quick and easy to install software on the phone. You install new applications during the process of synchronizing your phone and your computer.

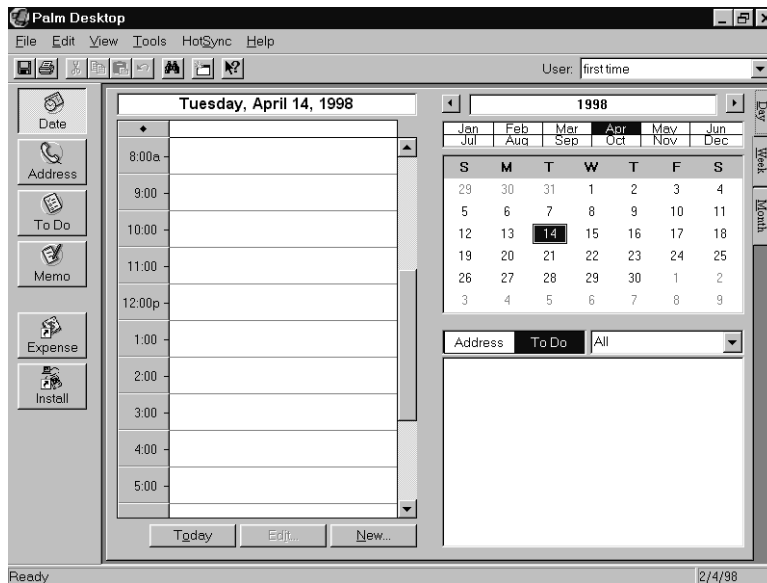
Considerations

- Be aware that each application you install resides in the phone’s memory and remains there until you delete it. If you see a message stating that the memory is full, delete some applications to free up memory. A hard reset of the phone automatically deletes these applications; you can also delete them manually.
- Install only applications from reliable sources. It is recommended that you use only Palm-certified or Platinum-certified applications. (Products bearing the “Designed for Palm OS Platinum” logo have passed compatibility testing established by Palm Inc. and administered by Product Quality Partners.)

To install software on your Kyocera smartphone

1. Copy the application you want to install to your computer. Put it in the Add-On folder (inside the Palm folder).
If you prefer to copy the application into another folder, you must navigate to that folder before you complete step 5.
2. From the computer, launch the Palm Desktop for the Kyocera smartphone.

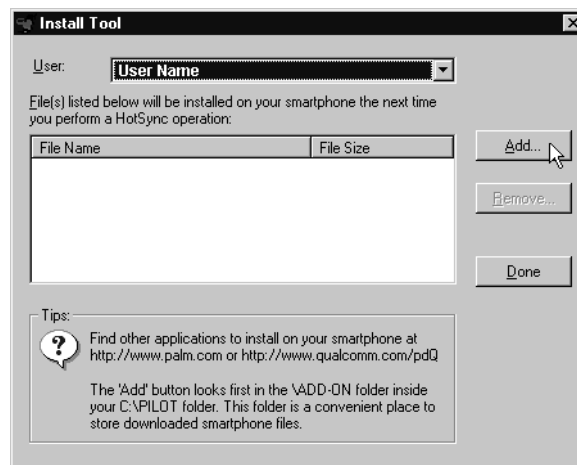
You can double-click the Palm Desktop icon on your Windows desktop (or select Palm Desktop from the Start menu) to open the Palm Desktop software.



3. Click **Install**.



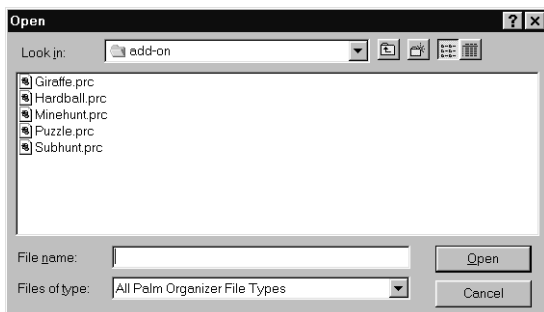
When you click Install, the Install Tool opens.



Note: You can also open the Palm Install Tool by selecting Install Tool from the Palm Desktop program group or by double-clicking any file with a PRC file extension.

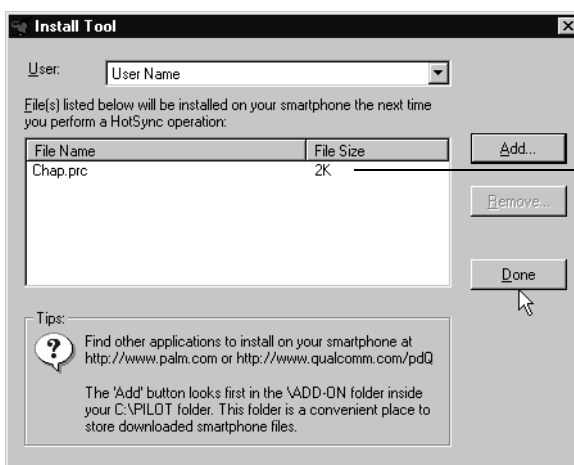
4. Select the appropriate user name in the User drop-down list.
5. Click **Add**.

The Add-On folder appears. If you haven't placed the PRC file in the Add-On folder, navigate to the appropriate location to find it.



- When you have located the PRC file you want to install, select the file and click **Open**.

Use Shift-click or Ctrl-click to select multiple applications.



The PRC file you selected appears in the list. You can verify the size of the file here.

- Repeat steps 5–6 for each PRC file you want to install.
If you decide not to install an application, click it and then click **Remove**. (This does not remove the application from your computer; it simply removes it from the list of applications to install.)
- When you have identified all the files to be installed, click **Done**.
These files will be installed on the phone when you perform your next HotSync operation.
- If you want to install the files immediately, turn on the phone and place it in the cradle. Press the HotSync button.
- Tap **Local Sync**. The applications are installed during synchronization.

Removing applications from the phone

Each application you install resides in the phone's memory and remains there until you delete it. If you see a "memory full" message or if you decide that you no longer need an application, you can remove it to recover the memory.

You can remove any application, patch, or extension that you have installed on your phone. You cannot remove the applications that were installed at the factory.

To remove an add-on application

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Applications menus.
3. From the App menu, tap **Delete**.

The Delete window lists all the additional applications you have loaded on the phone and how much memory each of them takes.



4. Tap the application you want to remove. Then tap **Delete**.
5. Tap **Yes** to confirm that you want to remove the application.
6. Tap **Done**.

Removing the Desktop software

If you no longer want to use the Palm Desktop software, you can remove it.

To remove the Desktop software

1. From the Windows Start menu, choose **Settings**. Then choose **Control Panel**.
2. Double-click the **Add/Remove Programs** icon.
3. On the Install/Uninstall tab, select the **Desktop** software from the list.
4. Click **Add/Remove**.
5. Click **Yes** to confirm you want to remove the application.



Transferring Information

There are many ways to transfer information to and from your Kyocera smartphone. You can synchronize data with your computer; you can beam data to other devices with infrared ports, and you can download third-party PRC applications into the phone.

In this chapter

- Installing Kyocera smartphone Desktop software, page 71
- Synchronizing data using the sync cradle, page 74
- Synchronizing data remotely, page 76
- Wireless direct-to-modem synchronization, page 80
- Synchronizing data using the infrared port, page 81
- Creating a user profile, page 84
- Customizing a conduit, page 87
- Transferring information between Palm devices, page 88
- Troubleshooting HotSync operations, page 90
- Beaming information, page 91

Installing Kyocera smartphone Desktop software

Desktop software extends many of the functions of your Kyocera smartphone to your computer. Using the Kyocera smartphone Desktop, you can easily do the following:

- Work with applications for the Palm OS platform on your computer.
- Back up the data on the phone and synchronize the data with the Kyocera smartphone Desktop.
- Import and export data, so you can easily transfer data from other Windows applications into Address Book or Memo Pad.
- Print your Date Book, Address Book, To Do List, and Memo Pad information on any Windows-compatible printer.

About synchronizing data

Using the Kyocera smartphone Desktop, you can synchronize the data on your phone with the information on your computer. Changes you make on either the phone or the computer appear in both places.

Synchronization is a simple, one-step procedure that ensures your data is always safe and up-to-date. You can synchronize your data by connecting the phone directly to your computer with the sync cradle (page 74), by synchronizing remotely to a network directly (page 76), by synchronizing remotely over a modem (page 80), or by “beaming” (sending data via the infrared port—page 91). Synchronization can also be done by connecting to a computer using the smartphone’s wireless modem or over a network (see Chapter 11, “Setting Up Network Connections”).

For example, if you travel with an infrared-enabled laptop, you don’t need the sync cradle or the data cable to synchronize information on your phone and your laptop. Simply enable infrared communication on your computer and follow the instructions given in “Customizing a conduit” on page 87.

If you have already installed the Palm Desktop

If you have already installed the Palm Desktop for another Palm handheld device, there is no need to install the software again. However, if you intend to keep using both devices, **give your Kyocera smartphone a different user name** than the Palm handheld device.

If you need to install from floppy disks

If you need to install using diskettes, you can order the Palm Desktop installation diskettes from Palm Computing.

If you need to install the Palm Desktop on a Macintosh

To install the Palm Desktop on a Macintosh computer, you must purchase a Palm MacPac connection kit. Contact Palm, Inc. at (800) 881-7256 (USA), (800) 891-6342 (Canada), or (801) 431-1536 (worldwide). You can also visit the Palm Connected Organizers Web site at <http://www.palm.com>.

Windows system requirements

Your computer system must meet at least the following requirements.:

- Windows 95, Windows 98, Windows 2000, or Windows NT 4.0
- IBM-compatible 486 computer or higher
- 8 MB RAM (memory) *minimum*;
16 MB recommended
- 12 MB available hard disk space
- VGA monitor or better
- CD-ROM drive
- Mouse
- One available serial port

Optional equipment

- Windows-compatible printer

Before you install software

To ensure a safe and uninterrupted installation of the Kyocera smartphone Desktop software, please do the following before you begin:

1. Remove the phone from the cradle during software installation.
2. Exit all programs, including those that run automatically at startup, such as fax software, virus protection software, screen-savers, and application toolbars such as Microsoft Office.
3. If you are installing from diskettes that you have ordered from Palm Computing (rather than the CD provided with your phone), make sure the original Palm Desktop diskettes are write-protected, and then make backup copies of them. Use the copies to install the software, and store the original diskettes in a safe place. Refer to your computer manual for information about locking or copying diskettes.

NOTE: Do not simply copy the Desktop files to your hard drive. You must use the installer to place the files in their proper locations and to decompress the files.

To install the Kyocera smartphone Desktop software

1. Exit any Windows programs and disable any virus-scanning software.
2. Insert the Kyocera smartphone Desktop CD into the computer's CD-ROM drive (or insert the diskette labeled Setup into the diskette drive).
3. Wait for the introduction screen to appear.
If the introduction screen does not appear automatically, open the Start menu and choose Run. Type the letter of your CD-ROM drive, followed by a colon and the word **setup**. For example, if your CD-ROM drive is drive D, type **D:setup**.
4. Click the Install button. Follow the instructions on the screen.
5. After you have installed the software, refer to the Help menu for complete information about how to use the Desktop.

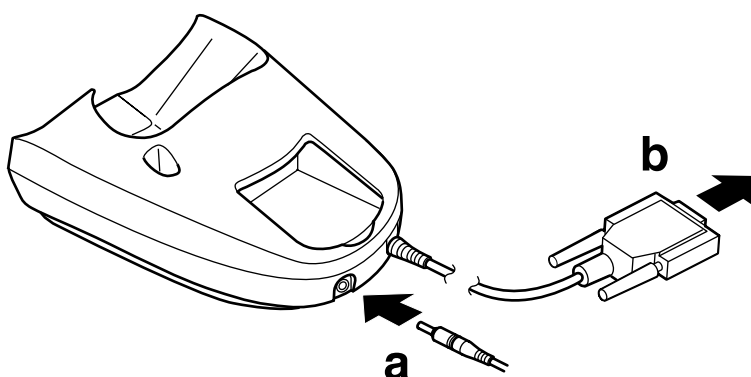
To connect the sync cradle

Your package includes a cradle for storing the phone, recharging its battery, and synchronizing information with your computer. If you have purchased an extra battery, you can charge it in the cradle as well.

To synchronize data between your phone and your computer, you must connect the cradle to the computer. If you don't plan to synchronize data, just plug the power cable into the cradle and into a power outlet.



1. Place the sync cradle on a flat surface near your computer.
2. Insert the small round plug of the power cable (a) into the base of the sync cradle. Use only the power cable that came with your Kyocera smartphone. Using any other charger or AC adapter will invalidate your warranty and may damage the sync cradle.



3. Plug the other end of the cable into an AC power outlet.
4. To attach the cradle to your computer, first turn off the computer.
5. Plug the data cable from the sync cradle (b) into a serial communications (COM) port on your computer. The cradle requires a dedicated port; it cannot share a port with an internal modem, infrared port, or other device.
6. Turn on the computer.

Synchronizing data using the sync cradle

Running your first synchronization

The first time you synchronize data, you must enter user information on both the phone and the Kyocera smartphone Desktop.

Important considerations

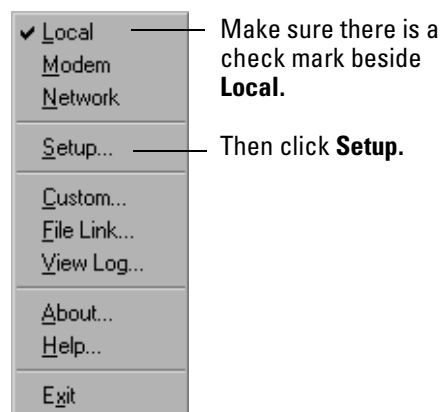
- You must perform your first synchronization with a local, direct connection using the sync cradle, rather than using a modem or the infrared port. After the first synchronization, you can use the other methods explained in this chapter.
- Do not turn the phone power on or off during synchronization.
- Do not remove the phone from the sync cradle during synchronization.
- If you are a Palm user, read “Transferring information between Palm devices” on page 88 before you synchronize the phone.
- If you are a System Administrator preparing several phones for a group of users, see “Synchronizing data using the infrared port” on page 81 before performing the following steps.

To synchronize data the first time

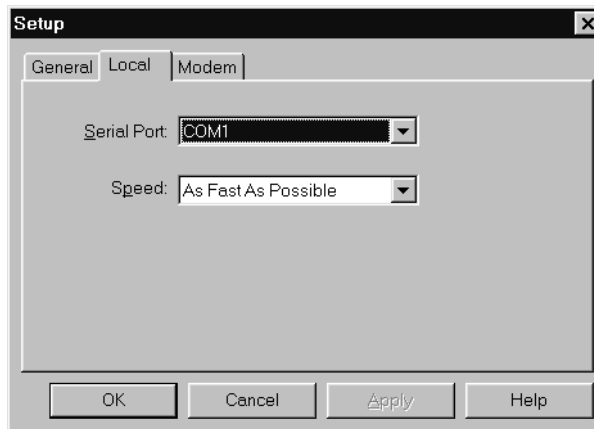
PHONE ➤ May be either on or off. Do not turn it on or off during synchronization.

FLIP ➤ May be open or closed

1. Once you have installed the Desktop, click the  icon in the Windows system tray.
If the icon doesn't appear in the system tray, open the Start menu and select Programs > Kyocera smartphone Desktop > HotSync Manager.
2. In the popup menu, verify that **Local** is checked. Then click **Setup**.
The Setup window appears.



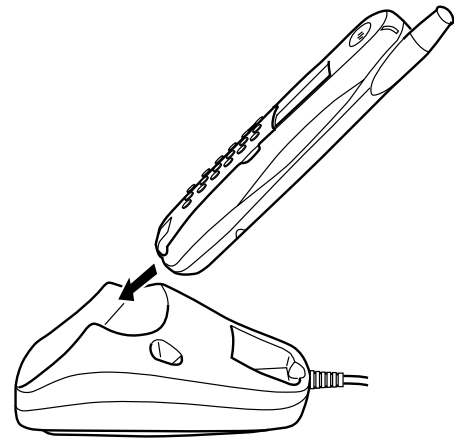
3. Click the **Local** tab.



4. In the Serial Port field, select the port where you connected the cable. Click **OK**.
5. Slide the Kyocera smartphone into the sync cradle.

IMPORTANT: Do not turn the phone power on or off—or remove the phone from the sync cradle—during synchronization.

6. Press the sync button on the cradle. During your first synchronization, a message asks for your user name.
7. On the computer, enter a unique user name. Problems may occur if you try to synchronize more than one handheld device with the same user name.
8. Click **OK**.



A message tells you when synchronization is complete.

To synchronize data using the cradle

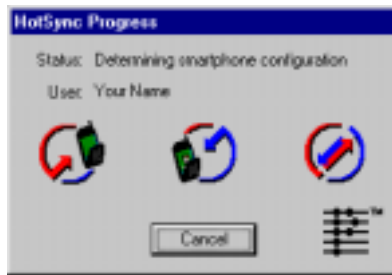
PHONE May be either on or off. Do not turn it on or off during synchronization.

FLIP May be either open or closed

After you have completed your first synchronization, the process is even faster and easier.

1. Slide the Kyocera smartphone into the sync cradle.
2. Make sure the  icon appears in the computer's taskbar. If it does not, open the Start menu and select Programs > Kyocera smartphone Desktop > HotSync Manager.

3. Press the sync button on the cradle.



4. Wait for a message indicating that the process is complete.
Do not turn the phone on or off or remove it from the sync cradle during synchronization.

Synchronizing data remotely

You can synchronize your Kyocera smartphone with your primary computer (the computer you use on a regular basis) while you are on the road and away from your office or home. There are three methods for doing this:

- **Landline Network Synchronization:** this allows you to synchronize your Kyocera smartphone using a remote computer that is on the same network as your primary computer. Both the remote computer and your primary computer must have the Kyocera Smartphone Desktop software installed.
- **Wireless Network Synchronization:** this allows you to synchronize your Kyocera smartphone with your primary computer if your primary computer is on a network and the network has dial-up access.
- **Wireless Direct-to-modem Synchronization:** this allows you to synchronize your Kyocera smartphone with your primary computer by using your smartphone to dial into your primary computer's modem.

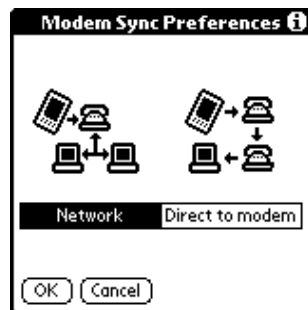
Landline network synchronization

Certain conditions must be met before you can perform your first landline network synchronization:

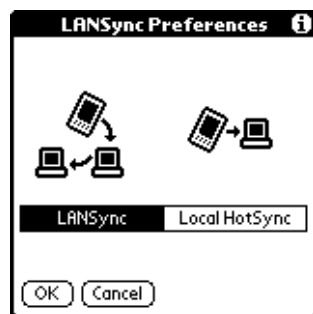
- The Kyocera smartphone already must have been synchronized with your primary computer. (Your primary computer is the computer that stores all of your information and that you use on a regular basis.)
- The primary computer must have both **Local** and **Network** checked in the HotSync Manager.
- The appropriate user(s) must be selected. (In the HotSync Manager, select **Setup**, then the Network Tab.)
- The remote computer must have the Kyocera Smartphone Desktop software installed, and must be on the same network as your primary computer.

Synchronizing

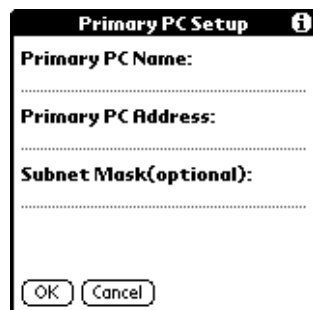
1. Start the HotSync application on your Kyocera smartphone.
2. Tap the Menu icon and select **Modem Sync Prefs**.



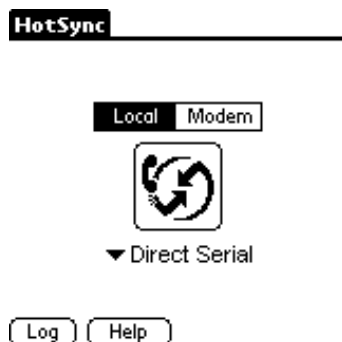
3. Select **Network**. Tap **OK**.
4. Tap the Menu icon and select **LANSync Prefs**.



5. Select **LANSync**. Tap **OK**.
6. Tap the Menu icon and select **Primary PC Setup**. This is the primary computer that you wish to synchronize with.



7. Check the settings. These settings should already be filled in with information from initially synchronizing your Kyocera smartphone with your primary computer.
Tap **OK**.



8. Select the **Local** option on the main screen of the HotSync application.
9. Place your Kyocera smartphone in the cradle (or use the separate data cable accessory) that is connected to the remote computer.
10. Tap the  icon on the HotSync application screen. The remote computer will appear to perform a normal synchronization operation.

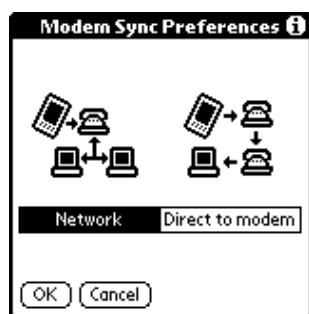
Wireless network synchronization

Certain conditions must be met before you can perform your first landline network synchronization:

- The Kyocera smartphone already must have been synchronized with your primary computer. (Your primary computer is the computer that stores all of your information and that you use on a regular basis.)
- The primary computer must have both **Local** and **Network** checked in the HotSync Manager.
- The appropriate user(s) must be selected. (In the HotSync Manager, select **Setup**, then the Network Tab.)

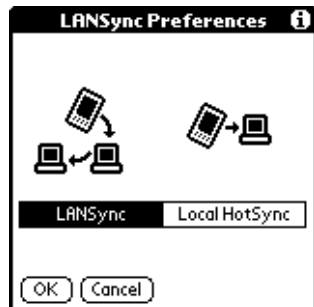
Synchronizing

1. Start the HotSync application on your Kyocera smartphone.
2. Tap the Menu icon and select **Modem Sync Prefs**.

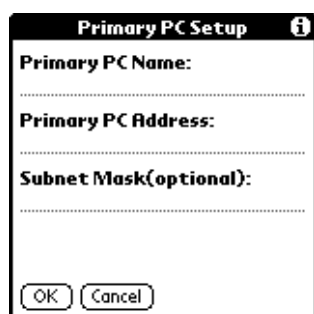


3. Select **Network**. Tap **OK**.

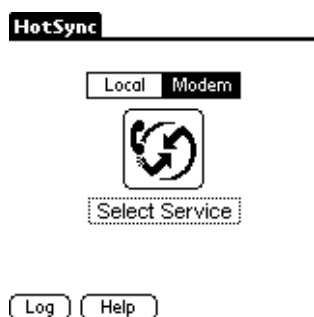
4. Tap the Menu icon and select **LANSync Prefs.**



5. Select **LANSync**. Tap **OK**.
6. Tap the Menu icon and select **Primary PC Setup**. This is the primary computer that you wish to synchronize with.



7. Check the settings. These settings should already be filled in with information from initially synchronizing your Kyocera smartphone with your primary computer.
Tap **OK**.
8. Select the **Modem** option on the main screen of the HotSync application.



9. Tap on "Select Service." The Network Preferences screen will appear.
10. Select the network connection used to connect to the same network that your primary computer is connected to and tap **Done**.
11. Tap the HotSync icon in the center of the HotSync application screen. Your Kyocera smartphone will initiate a data call for connection to the selected

service. Network synchronization operations take additional time due to general network latency (slowness) and overhead protocols.

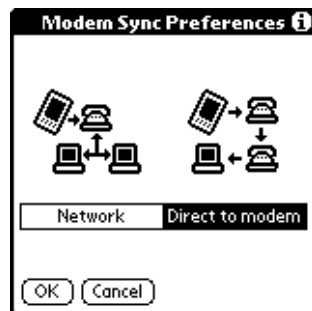
Wireless direct-to-modem synchronization

Certain conditions must be met before you can perform your first modem-to-modem synchronization.

- The Kyocera smartphone already must have been synchronized with your primary computer. (Your primary computer is the computer that stores all of your information and that you use on a regular basis.)
- The primary computer must have both **Local** and **Network** checked in the HotSync Manager.
- The appropriate user(s) must be selected. (In the HotSync Manager, select **Setup**, then the Network Tab.)

Synchronizing

1. Start the HotSync application on your Kyocera smartphone.
2. Tap the Menu icon and select **Modem Sync Prefs**.



3. Select **Direct to modem**. Tap **OK**.
4. Select the **Modem** option on the main screen of the HotSync application.
5. Tap the ▼ below the HotSync icon and select **Wireless Modem** for the connection type.
A screenshot showing the 'Wireless Modem' selection screen. It has a dashed box labeled 'Enter phone #'.
6. Tap Enter phone #, the Phone Setup screen will appear.
7. Enter the phone number of the modem that you will be dialing into and tap **OK**.
8. Tap on the icon in the center of the HotSync application. A circuit-switched data call will be made to the modem on the primary computer and the synchronization process will be begin.

NOTE: Make sure the conduits on the primary computer will **not** prompt for a user response. Such a prompt will cause the synchronization process to appear to fail, because the primary computer will wait indefinitely for a user to

respond. This will only happen with third-party conduits; please check with the respective developers for more information.

Synchronizing data using the infrared port

Before you can synchronize data using the infrared port, the computer with which you want to synchronize must fulfill these requirements.

- Your computer must support the IrCOMM implementation of the IrDA standards.
- Your computer must have either an enabled port built into the computer or an enabled infrared device attached to the computer.

Desktop computers are likely to require an infrared device attached to a physical COMM port. Laptops are likely to have a built-in infrared port. Your computer must also have an installed infrared driver.

Check your computer's documentation to learn if the computer supports infrared communication. If your computer is a Macintosh G3 (or higher) or uses Microsoft Windows 98 (or higher), infrared communication is built into the operating system. Some versions of the Macintosh iMac also have built-in infrared communication.

To check if your Windows 95 computer supports infrared communication

1. In the Windows taskbar, click **Start**.
2. Choose **Settings**, and then choose **Control Panel**.
3. In the Control Panel, look for the infrared icon.

If the icon is there, your computer is enabled for infrared communication. If the icon does not appear, you need to install an infrared driver.

To install a Windows 95 infrared driver

1. Click  in the Windows taskbar to open the menu.
2. Choose **Setup**. Click the **Local** and **Modem** tabs. Make a note of the COM ports shown on these panels. You need this information later.
3. Go to this Web site:
<http://www.microsoft.com/windows/downloads>
4. Follow the links to the Windows 95 or 98 IrDA 2.0 (infrared driver), and follow the instructions to download the driver.
5. Find the file W95 or W98ir.exe on your computer. Be sure this file is in a folder where you want to store the infrared driver.
6. Double-click W95 or W98ir.exe. A window displays the files that are being unzipped onto your hard disk. When the title bar displays Finished, close this window.

7. In the same folder where you unzipped W95 or W98ir.exe, find the file Setup.exe. Double-click it to begin installation.
8. Accept the defaults provided by the Add Infrared Device Wizard, except when the Wizard asks you to select the port to which your infrared device is connected. Be sure that an available communications port is selected. Do not select the port that the HotSync Manager currently uses.
9. If an alert appears telling you that there is a communication port conflict, click OK and proceed with the rest of the installation using the defaults provided.

To configure HotSync Manager for infrared communication

When your computer is prepared for infrared synchronization, you must specify the simulated port to be used.

1. Click  in the Windows system tray to open the menu.
2. Make sure that **Local** is checked on the menu. Then click **Setup**.
3. Click the **Local** tab.
4. In the Serial Port drop-down box, select the COM port that was given as the simulated port in the Options tab of the Infrared Monitor (in this example, COM4).
5. Click **OK**.

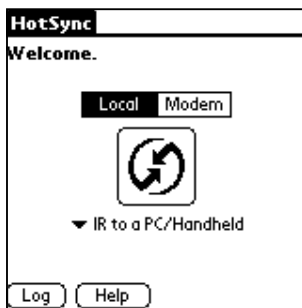
The HotSync Manager is now communicating with the simulated port defined for infrared communication. This means you cannot use your cradle again until you reconfigure the HotSync Manager to communicate with the port defined for cradle synchronization.

To synchronize data using the infrared port

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to select HotSync.



3. If Local is not already selected, tap **Local**.
4. Tap the ▼ below the icon and select **IR to a PC/Handheld**.

5. Position the infrared port of your phone within a few inches of the infrared port of your computer.
6. Tap the HotSync icon to start the synchronization.

To return to synchronization by the cradle

After you have set the computer to synchronize data using the infrared port, you must change the computer settings if you want to return to using the cradle for synchronization.

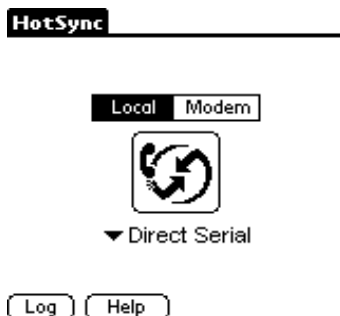
1. If necessary, connect the cradle to a serial (COM) port of your computer and plug the power cord into an outlet.
2. Click  in the Windows system tray to open the menu.
3. From the menu, choose **Setup**. Then click **Local**.
4. Select the COM port to which your cradle is connected.
5. Click **OK**.

You will also have to reset your Kyocera smartphone for synchronizing by using the cradle. To do this, place your Kyocera smartphone in the cradle and follow these procedures:

PHONE ▶ May be either on or off

FLIP ▶ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to select HotSync.
3. If Local is not already selected, tap **Local**.



4. Tap the ▼ below the icon and select **Direct Serial**.

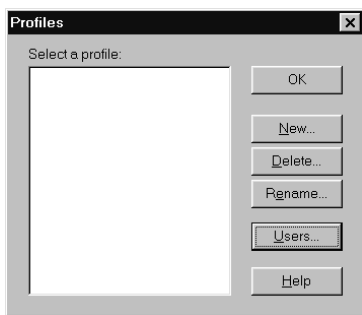
You can leave the computer set to synchronize data using the infrared port and still use the cradle. This is useful if you synchronize data from the phone to both your desktop computer and a laptop. When you travel, you don't have to carry a cradle or cable because your phone is set to synchronize data via the infrared port. When you're in the office, just return the phone to the cradle.

Creating a user profile

If you need to configure a number of phones with specific information (such as a company phone list) before distributing them to their actual users, you can create a user profile to load the data into a phone without associating that data with a user name. The user profile feature is designed only for the first-time synchronization, before you assign a User ID to a particular phone. See “Using File Link” on page 85 for information about loading data after you assign a User ID.

To create a user profile

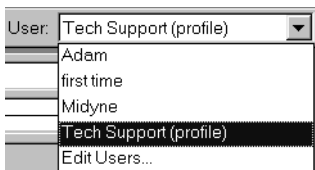
1. Open the Kyocera smartphone Desktop.
2. From the Tools menu, select **Users** to open the Users dialog.
3. Click **Profiles** to open the Profiles dialog.



4. Click **New** to open the New Profile dialog.



5. Enter a name for the profile and click **OK**.
6. Repeat steps 4–5 for each Profile you want to create.
7. When you have finished, click **OK** to return to the Kyocera smartphone Desktop.
8. Select the Profile from the User list and create the data for the Profile (such as company phone list).



To use a profile for the first-time synchronization

1. Place the new phone in the cradle.
2. On the phone, tap  to view the Applications Launcher. Tap .

3. On the computer, click **Profiles** to open the Profiles dialog. Choose the profile you want to install on the phone. Click **OK**.



4. Click **Yes** to transfer all the Profile data to the phone.
The next time you synchronize the phone, you will be prompted to assign a User name to the phone.

Using File Link

Using File Link, you can synchronize the Address Book and Memo Pad information on your phone with an external file, such as a company phone list.

The data is stored in a separate category on your Kyocera smartphone Desktop and your phone. You can configure the File Link feature to check for changes to the external file when you synchronize. For information on how to set up a File Link, see the Kyocera smartphone Desktop Software online Help.

With File Link you can synchronize data stored in any of these formats:

- Comma-separated (*.csv)
- Address Book archive (*.aba)
- Memo Pad archive (*.mpa)
- Text (*.txt)

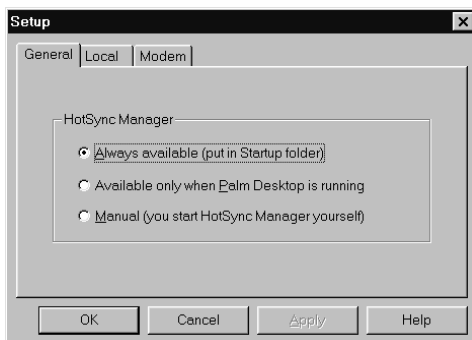
Modifying synchronization options

You can choose when you want HotSync Manager to run, and you can adjust the local and modem HotSync settings.

To set HotSync options

1. Click  in the Windows system tray to open the menu.

2. On the menu, click **Setup**.



3. Click the General tab and select one of the following options:

Always available

Adds HotSync Manager to the Startup folder and constantly monitors the communication port for synchronization requests. With this option, the HotSync Manager conducts synchronizations even when the Kyocera smartphone Desktop software is not running.

Available when Kyocera smartphone Desktop is running

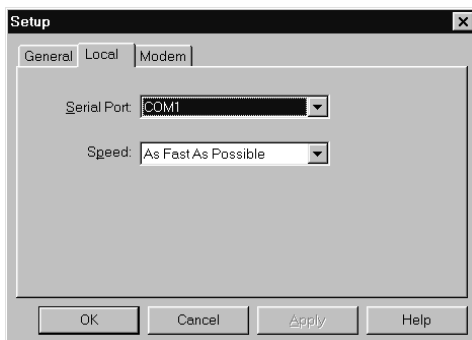
Starts HotSync Manager and monitors requests automatically when you open the Kyocera smartphone Desktop software.

Manual

Starts the HotSync Manager and monitors requests only when you select HotSync Manager from the Start menu.

If you're not sure which option to use, select Always available.

4. Click the **Local** tab to display the settings for the connection between your PC and the cradle.



- Adjust the following options as needed.

- Serial Port** Identifies which port the Kyocera smartphone Desktop software will use to communicate with the cradle. This selection should match the port number where you connected the cradle.
- The Kyocera smartphone cannot share this port with an internal modem or other device. If you have trouble determining the correct port, see HotSync operations, page 260.
- Speed** Determines the speed at which data is transferred between the phone and the Kyocera smartphone Desktop software. We suggest you try the As Fast As Possible rate first, and adjust downward if you experience problems. This setting allows the phone and the Kyocera smartphone Desktop software to find and use the fastest speed.

- Click **OK** to close the Setup dialog.

Customizing a conduit

For each application, a program called a *conduit* controls how the records are moved during synchronization. There are conduits for the Date Book, Address Book, To Do List, Memo Pad, and Expense applications, as well as System and Install conduits.

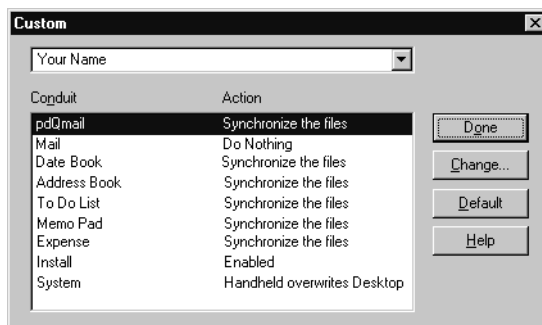
In most cases, you won't need to make any changes in the default conduit settings. However, in the following cases, you must customize these settings:

- To overwrite data on either the phone or the Kyocera smartphone Desktop.
- To avoid synchronizing a particular type of file because you don't use it.

NOTE Be aware that some third-party applications install their own conduits. For detailed information on these conduits, see the documentation for the third-party software product.

To customize conduit settings

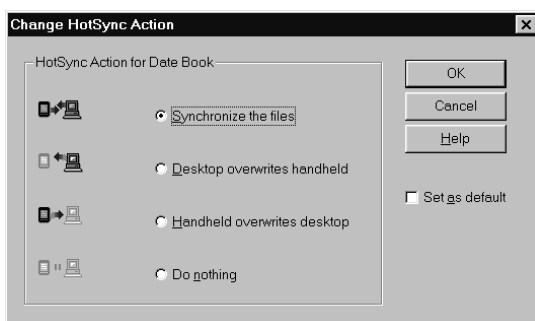
- Click  in the Windows taskbar to open the menu.
- On the menu, click **Custom**.



- Select the appropriate user name from the list at the top of the dialog.

4. Select the application in the Conduit list you want to change.
5. Click **Change**.

The Change HotSync Action dialog appears.



6. Click the direction in which you want to write data, or click Do Nothing to skip data transfer for an application.

NOTE: Changing the HotSync setting from the default affects only the next HotSync operation. Thereafter, the HotSync Actions revert to their default settings. To use a new setting on an ongoing basis, select the Set As Default box. Thereafter, just click Default in the Custom dialog to revert to the default settings.

7. Repeat steps 3–6 to change conduit settings for other applications or for a different user name.
8. Click **OK** to activate your settings.

Transferring information between Palm devices

There are three methods of exchanging information between two or more Palm devices. Do *not* simply synchronize your new phone to copy the data. Some important settings on the phone will be changed if you do so.

To synchronize using the same user name

Use this method only if you are transferring data from a Palm device you will not be using anymore to a new device. If you intend to use both devices on an ongoing basis, do not use this method, because it gives both devices the same user name. (If you continue to synchronize two Palm devices with the same user name, serious synchronization problems may occur.)

NOTE: If you have accidentally given two Palm devices the same name, see “Troubleshooting HotSync operations” on page 90 for procedures to rename one of them.

1. Synchronize the original Palm device to your computer.
2. On the computer, launch Windows Explorer.
3. Navigate to the C:\Palm directory and open your user folder

This folder has a name similar to the name of your old Palm device. For example, if the user name for your Palm device was “Joe Smith,” the folder might be named “smithj.”

4. Inside the user folder, open the folder called **Backup**.
5. Locate the file named **Saved_Preferences.prc**. Move this file to another folder or delete it.

The Saved_Preferences file contains the preference settings from your Palm device (for example, your selected alert sounds) . The Kyocera smartphone has many additional preference settings (for example, network settings and phone settings). If you do not move or delete the existing Saved_Preferences.prc file before synchronizing, the organizer settings will overwrite the phone settings, and you will lose the benefit of these new features.

6. Synchronize the Kyocera smartphone, choosing the same user name as that of the old Palm device. All of your data is transferred to your phone. A new Saved_Preferences.prc file is created, containing the new phone preferences.
7. If you intend to continue using the original device, do a hard reset on it. The hard reset removes the user name and all associated data from the device. It will not affect the data that has already been synchronized with your phone.

To copy and paste data

Use this method if you have a small number of records to move or if you are not comfortable manipulating files and folders in Windows Explorer. This method is also recommended if you want to merge different information between two devices.

1. Perform a HotSync operation on the new device, giving it a new user name. This user name must be unique and different from the first device.
2. Launch the Kyocera smartphone Desktop.
3. In the upper right-hand corner, open the drop-down list of existing user names. Use this list to toggle between the user name of the device with the old information and the user name of the new device.
4. In the Address Book, To Do List, or Memo List on the computer, highlight the information to be copied.

To select a sequential group of records, hold down the Shift key while you select them. To select a group of nonsequential records, hold down the Control key while you select them.

5. Right click on any part of the highlighted item(s). Select **Copy** from the pop-up menu.
6. From the list of users, select the new user name. Open the appropriate application (Address Book, To Do List, or Memo List).
7. Right click on a blank part of the application. Select **Paste** from the pop-up menu.
8. Repeat steps 4–7 for all of the other records and applications.

NOTE: You cannot copy categories; the categories must be recreated on the new device. It is a good idea to create them ahead of time to simplify the copy and paste process. Date Book events cannot be copied by category.

9. Perform a HotSync operation with the new device and new user name. All of the information will be transferred over.

To copy data using Windows Explorer

The data transfer method is a more advanced method requiring you to move files in Windows Explorer. Do not try this method unless you are familiar with moving files in a Windows environment.

1. Perform a HotSync operation on the new device, giving it a new user name. This user name must be unique and different from the first device.
2. If the Kyocera smartphone Desktop is open, close it.
3. Open the Windows Explorer. Navigate to the Kyocera smartphone Desktop directory. By default, this directory is C:\Palm.
4. Locate the folder with the name of the original Palm device. Copy the contents of the folder into another directory or onto the Desktop for safekeeping.
This step makes a duplicate of the files in case a problem occurs.
5. Go back to the folder with the name of the original Palm device. Copy—do not move—the contents into the folder with the name of the new device.
6. Launch the Kyocera smartphone Desktop. All of the data from the older device should be located under the new user name.
7. Perform a HotSync operation with the new device and new user name. All of the information will be transferred to the new device.

Troubleshooting HotSync operations

The HotSync operation fails to start

- Make sure your computer is turned on, and that it does not shut down automatically as part of an energy-saving feature.
- Check the cable between the cradle and the computer serial port.
- Make sure you selected the correct serial port on the Local tab in the Setup dialog. Select the port where you connected the cradle.
- Make sure you are not running another program—such as America Online[®], CompuServe[®], or WinFax[®]—that uses the same serial port.
- Verify that HotSync Manager is running. If it is running, exit and restart it.
- Make sure you selected Local from the HotSync Manager menu or the Kyocera smartphone Desktop menu.
- Try deleting the *Saved_Preferences.PRC* file on your computer:
Browse to C:\Palm\<username>\Backup, where <username> is the name of

your Palm device.
Locate the *Saved_Preferences.PRC* file and delete it.

The HotSync operation does not run to completion

- Do not turn the phone on or off while it is synchronizing data.
- If you have problems using the As Fast As Possible option or a specific speed, select a lower baud rate setting on the Local tab in the Setup dialog.
- Read the HotSync Log for the user account you are synchronizing.
- Try deleting the *Saved_Preferences.PRC* file on your computer:
Browse to C:\Palm\<username>\Backup, where <username> is the name of your Palm device.
Locate the *Saved_Preferences.PRC* file and delete it.

If you have two Palm devices with the same user name

Problems occur during synchronization if two Palm devices have the same user name. The HotSync process creates a unique user ID in addition to the user name. It is important that no two IDs synchronize to the same user name. Follow these steps to rename one of the Palm devices.

1. On your computer, open the Kyocera smartphone Desktop.
2. From the Tools menu, select **Users**.
3. Click **New**.
4. Create a different user name.
5. Close the Kyocera smartphone Desktop.
6. Using Windows Explorer or the Desktop, locate the folder with the old user name. By default, the folder is located in the Pilot or Palm directory.
7. Copy—do not move—the files from that folder to the folder with the new user name.
8. Perform a hard reset on the organizer that will use the new user name.
9. Perform a HotSync operation with the reset organizer. When you are prompted from the user name, select the new name.

Beaming information

Your Kyocera smartphone is equipped with an infrared (IrDV) port that you can use to “beam” information to other devices with infrared ports. These devices include other phones, Palm devices, and some laptop computers. You can beam the following:

- The current Address Book, Date Book, To Do List, or Memo Pad entry
- All Address Book, To Do List, or Memo Pad entries in the current category
- Your “business card” (To create a business card, see To create a business card, page 103.)

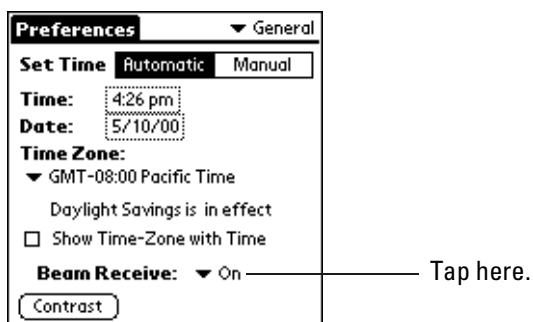
- An application that you have installed (if the application allows beaming)

To turn the beam receive feature on or off

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the last Preferences screen you used.
3. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner and select **General**.



4. Tap the ▼ beside **Beam Receive** and select **On** or **Off**.

To beam information

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Locate the entry you want to beam.
2. Tap  to open the menus.
3. From the Record menu, tap **Beam**.
4. Point the infrared port (at the top of the back panel) at the infrared port of the receiving device.

For best results, the devices should be from 5 to 30 centimeters (approximately 2 to 12 inches) apart, and the path between the two devices must be clear of obstacles.



5. Wait for the Beam Status dialog to indicate that the transfer is complete before you continue working on the phone.

TIP: To quickly beam your business card, just press and hold the Address Book  key for a few seconds.

To receive beamed information

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

Before you can receive beamed information, the beam receive feature must be turned on. See “To turn the beam receive feature on or off” on page 92. Point the infrared port directly at the infrared port of the transmitting device to open the Beam Status dialog.

1. Tap **Yes** to accept the transmission.
2. Wait for the Beam Status dialog to indicate that the transfer is complete, then tap **OK** to display the new entry.

Troubleshooting the Beam feature

Beamed data does not work

- Verify that the Beam feature is enabled (on the General Preferences screen). See “To turn the beam receive feature on or off” on page 92.
- Verify that the path between the two devices is clear of obstacles.
- Try using the Beam feature at different distances. The usual distance for beaming information is between five centimeters (approximately 2 inches) and one meter (approximately 40 inches). However, in some cases, you may find that greater or lesser distances work more effectively.

When data is beamed at the phone, an out-of-memory message appears

- The Kyocera smartphone requires at least twice the amount of memory available as the data you are receiving. For example, if you are receiving a 30K application, you must have at least 60K free.

Chapter 5



Address Book

Using the Address Book, you can easily keep track of names, addresses, phone numbers, email addresses, URLs, and other information about your personal and business contacts.

You can make phone calls, send email, or open Web sites directly from the Address Book. Each contact in the Address Book can have up to five phone numbers, email addresses, or Web addresses (URLs). You can put these entries into categories so you can quickly sort and view your entries in logical groups.

When the flip is closed, you can call up the entries in the Address Book by selecting Contacts from the Main Menu.

In this chapter

- Creating Address Book entries page 95
- Making calls from the Address Book page 96
- Editing Address Book entries page 98
- Beaming entries to other devices page 103
- Deleting entries page 104
- Using Address Book menus page 106

Creating Address Book entries

An Address Book entry is the name, address, and phone information you are keeping for a person or business. You can create these entries on the Kyocera smartphone, or you can use the Kyocera smartphone Desktop software to create them on your computer and download them to your phone during a HotSync operation. For complete information about synchronization procedures, see “Synchronizing data using the sync cradle” on page 74.

You can see the names and numbers in the Address Book with the flip either open or closed, but you must open the flip to edit them.

- With the flip open, press  to open the Address Book.
- With the flip closed, use the shuttle to select **Contacts** from the Main menu.
(Shortcut—If your phone is set to List Menus, press the shuttle up once from the home screen to open the Contacts menu.)

The same names and numbers appear in the Address Book and the Contacts list.

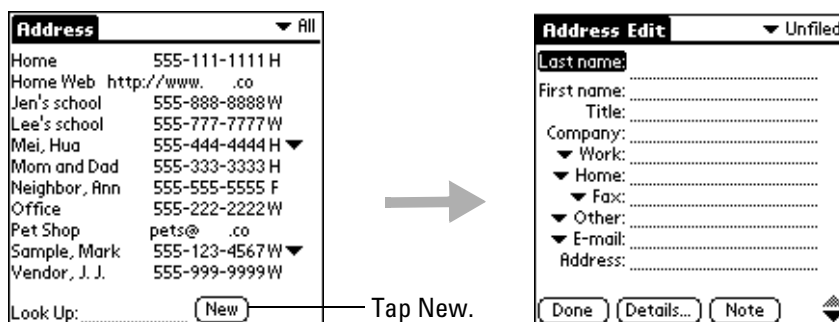
NOTE The Kyocera smartphone Desktop software also has data import capabilities that allow you to load database files into the Address Book. Refer to the online documentation supplied with the Desktop software for details.

To create a new Address Book entry

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the Address Book  key.
2. Tap **New** to display the Address Edit screen.



3. Enter the last name of a person you want to add to your Address Book.
You can write with the stylus or use the on-screen keyboard. The first letter is capitalized automatically (except for numeric and email information). For details about entering text, see “Entering information” on page 51.
4. Move to the next line either by tapping it or by writing , the Next Field Graffiti stroke.
5. Enter the person's first name on the First Name line.
6. Enter the rest of the information for this person or business.

Notice that you can enter email addresses or Web addresses (URLs) in any of the five phone number fields. To add pauses, see “To enter pauses in a phone number” on page 99.

7. Tap  to move to the next page.
8. When you have finished, tap **Done** to return to the Address screen.

Making calls from the Address Book

After you create an Address Book entry, you can make a call from it directly. If you have entered email addresses or URLs in the Address Book, you can also make direct connections to them if your service provider supports over-the-air data.

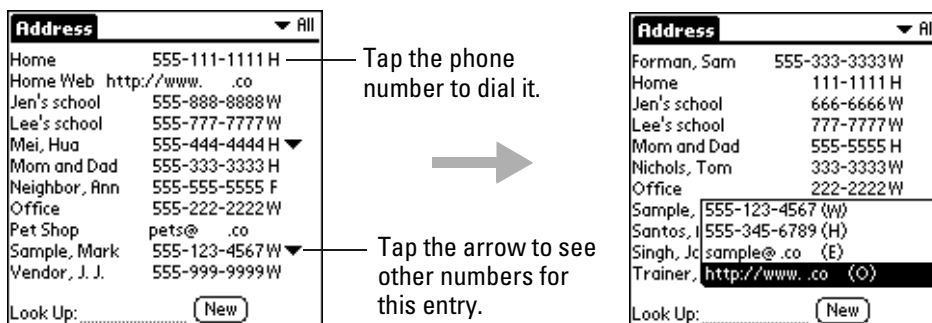
NOTE You cannot initiate conference calls from the Address Book. If your service provider supports conference calls, you can initiate a three-way call by entering the numbers directly on the keypad or the Dialer.

To make a phone call from the Address Book (with the flip open)

PHONE ➔ On

FLIP ➔ Open

1. Press the Address Book  key.



2. Scroll through the entries using either the up and down keys or the shuttle. Locate the person or business you want to call and do one of the following:
 - If the number you want to call appears in the list, tap the phone *number* (not the name).
 - To call one of the alternate numbers for an entry, tap the ▼ in the right column. All additional numbers for this person or business appear. Tap the one you want to call. That number becomes the primary number for the entry. Tap the number to select it.
3. Tap  in the Dialer to place the call.

By default, the Dialer opens when you select a number from the Address Book so you can verify the number before placing the call. If you prefer, you can set the phone to place calls immediately without opening the Dialer. See “To set Dialer preferences” on page 27.

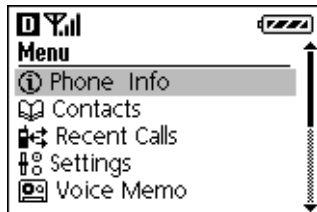
- When you have finished your call, tap .

To make a call from the Contacts List (with the flip closed)

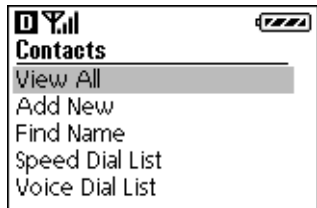
PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

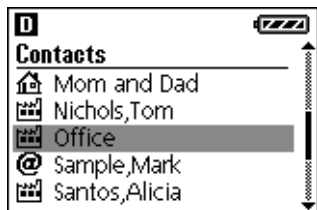
- From the Home screen, press the shuttle in to open the menus.



- Roll the shuttle down until **Contacts** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.



- With **View All** highlighted, press the shuttle in.



- Roll the shuttle up or down to scroll through the Contacts list. When the person you want to call is highlighted, press .
- When you have finished your call, press .

Editing Address Book entries

In the Address Book, you can locate your entries quickly, edit them, display them by name or company name, and group them by category. You can also choose the type of information you want your entries to include and exchange Address Book information with other phones or Palm devices.

To edit an Address Book entry

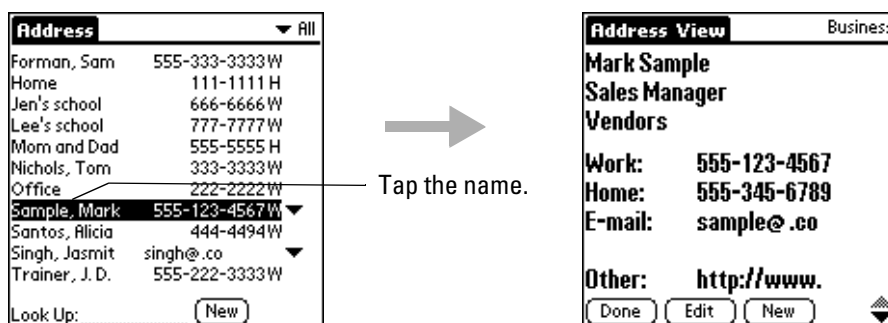
PHONE May be either on or off

FLIP Open

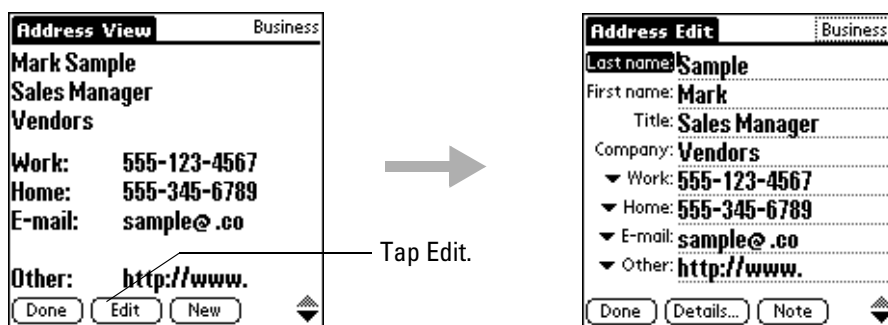
1. Press the Address Book  key.

2. Tap the name of the entry you want to change.

Tap the *name* in the left column, not the phone number in the right column. Tapping the phone number initiates a call.



3. In the Address View screen, tap **Edit**.



4. Tap any line (such as Address or City). Enter or change the information.

5. When you have finished, tap **Done**.

To enter pauses in a phone number

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

When you call automated systems, you often have to dial a series of numbers with pauses between them (for example, when sending a page or entering a password). You can place these pauses in the Address Book.

1. Press the Address Book  key.
2. Tap the *name* of the entry you want to edit.
The Address View screen appears.

3. Tap **Edit**.
The Address Edit screen appears.

4. Tap the appropriate phone number. Enter a percent sign for a hard pause or a comma for a timed pause wherever necessary.

To enter these punctuation marks using the on-screen keyboard, tap **123** in the lower right corner of the Graffiti writing area.

To write these punctuation marks using Graffiti, first tap once to enter punctuation mode. Then write the appropriate Graffiti stroke as shown in the table below.

Hard Pause (%)		When you call this number, the Kyocera smartphone pauses at this point. It does not continue with the next set of numbers until you tap Resume.
Timed Pause (,)		When you call this number, the Kyocera smartphone pauses for two seconds before continuing with the next set of numbers. You can enter as many commas as necessary to extend the length of the pause.

To scroll through the Address Book

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

Press the up and down buttons.

- In the Address screen, you move up or down by a screen of entries.
- In the Address View screen, you move to the previous or next entry.

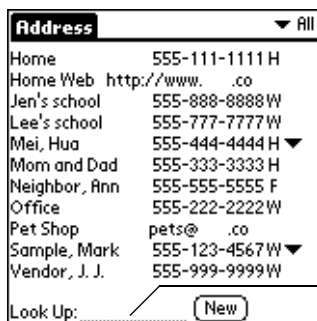
To look up an entry in the Address Book

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the Address Book  key.

2. Enter the first letter of the name you want to find.



Write the first letter or two in the Look Up

The list scrolls to the first entry beginning with that letter. If you write a second letter, the list scrolls to the first entry beginning with those two letters.

3. Tap any entry to view its contents.

NOTE: You can also look up entries in your Address Book with the flip closed. See "Making a call from the Contacts list" on page 30.

To choose other phone numbers in an Address Book entry

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

In your Address Book, you can keep up to five phone numbers, email addresses, or URLs for each entry. You can select the labels for these numbers individually. For example, you might want to keep a fax number for one person and a pager number for another. You can also choose which of these numbers you want to see in the Address Book for each entry.

1. Press the Address Book  key.
2. Tap the name of the entry you want to change.
Tap the *name* in the left column, not the phone number in the right column.
3. Tap **Edit** to display the Address Edit screen.
4. Tap the ▼ beside the phone number you want to change.



Tap the arrow to open the list.



5. From the list, tap the label (for example, Fax or Pager) you want to use.

- If you want to select which phone number appears in the Address Book and Contact list, tap **Details** to open the Address Entry Details dialog. If you don't want to change this setting, skip to step 9.



- Tap the ▼ beside **Show in List**. Select a label to identify which phone number appears on the Address screen and the Contacts list.
- Tap **OK**.
- Tap **Done**.

To assign a category to an Address Book entry

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

Categories can help you file your Address Book entries into groups for easy review. The Address Book has two standard categories (Business and Personal). You can create your own categories up to a total of 15 categories. For information about creating and editing categories, see “Using categories” on page 62.

- Press the Address Book  key.
- Tap the name you want to assign to a category.
Tap the *name* in the left column, not the phone number in the right column.
- Tap **Edit** in the Address View screen to display the Address Edit screen.
- In the Address Edit screen, tap the pick list in the upper-right corner. From the list, tap the category you want to assign to this entry.
- Tap **Done**.

To mark an entry as private

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

You can mark any entry as private. When the security features are turned on, private entries are not visible. You must enter a password to see them.

- Press the Address Book  key.
- Tap the entry you want to mark as private.
Tap the *name* in the left column, not the phone number in the right column.
- Tap **Edit** to display the Address Edit screen.

4. Tap **Details** to open the Address Entry Details dialog.



5. Tap the Private check box.
6. Tap **OK**.
7. In the confirmation dialog, tap **OK**.
8. Tap **Done**.

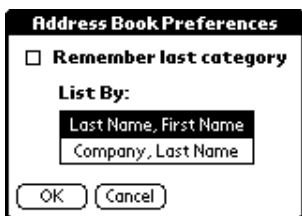
To sort the entries

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

You can sort the entries in the Address Book by Company and Last Name, rather than by Last Name and First Name. These settings do not change your Address Book data in any way; they merely change the view.

1. Press the Address Book  key.
2. Tap  to open the Address Book menus.
3. From the Options menu, select **Preferences**.



4. Tap the setting that you want to use.
5. Tap **OK**.

The Address Book is resorted based on your choice. Entries with no company name are always sorted by last name.

Beaming entries to other devices

Using the infrared (IR) port, you can beam Address Book entries to other Kyocera smartphones or Palm devices.

NOTE To conserve power, your Kyocera smartphone is delivered with the beam receive feature turned off. To turn it on, see “Beaming information” on page 91.

Once the beam feature is turned on, you can beam any of the following:

- **Your business card**—The business card is a specially designated entry containing information you want to exchange with business contacts. You can send your business card quickly with one-touch beaming.
- **An address entry**—You can select and beam any entry in your Address Book.
- **A category of address entries**—You can beam all of the entries in a category. For example, you can share a list of restaurants with a friend.

For more information on the IR port, see “Beaming information” on page 91.

To create a business card

PHONE ▶ May be either on or off

FLIP ▶ Open

1. Press the Address Book  key.
2. Tap **New**.
3. Create an entry containing the information you want on your business card.
4. Tap  to open the Address Book menus.
5. From the Record menu, tap **Select Business Card**. Tap **Yes** to accept this entry as your business card.
6. Tap **Done**.
Notice that in Address View, the  icon identifies this record as your business card.

To beam a business card

PHONE ▶ May be either on or off

FLIP ▶ Open

1. Press the Address Book  key.
2. Tap the name of your business card entry to display the Address View screen.
Tap the *name* in the left column, not the phone number in the right column.
3. Tap  to open the Address Book menus.
4. Tap **Beam Business Card** from the Record menu to beam your card.

You can also press and hold the Address Book  key for about two seconds to beam your card.

To beam the current entry

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the Address Book  key.
2. Tap the name of an entry you want to beam.
Tap the *name* in the left column, not the phone number in the right column.
3. Tap  to open the Address Book menus.
4. Tap Beam Address from the Record menu to beam the current entry.
If you beam entries often, you can set the full-screen pen stroke to beam the current entry. See “Pen preferences” on page 198.

To beam the current category

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the Address Book  key.
2. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner. From the list, select the category you want to beam.
3. Tap  to open the Address Book menus.
4. From the Record menu, tap **Beam Category**.

Deleting entries

You can remove entries from the Address Book at any time.

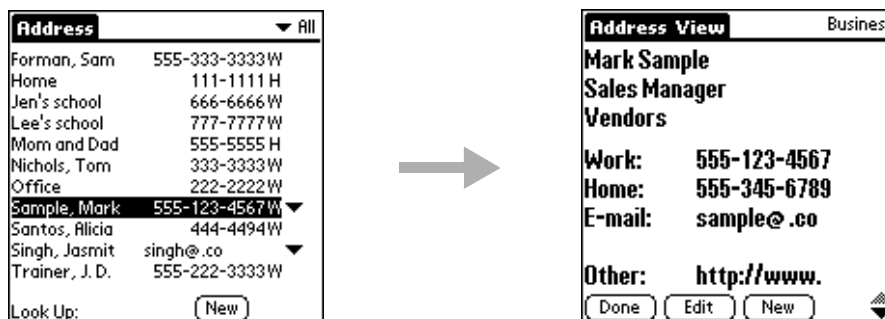
To delete an entry from the Address Book

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the Address Book  key.
2. Tap the name of the entry you want to delete.

Be sure to tap the *name* in the left column, not the phone number in the right column. Tapping the phone number initiates a call.



3. Tap **Edit** to display the Address Edit screen.



4. Tap **Details**.



5. Tap **Delete**.



6. If you want to keep a backup copy of this entry on your computer, put a check mark in the **Save archive copy on PC** check box. If you don't want to save a backup, remove the check mark.
7. In the confirmation dialog, tap **OK** to delete the entry or **Cancel** to keep it.
If you delete the entry, it is removed from both the Address Book and the Speed Dial list.

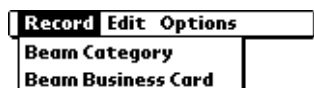
Using Address Book menus

This section covers the menu commands specific to the Address Book. For information about menu commands common to all applications, “Using menus” on page 59.

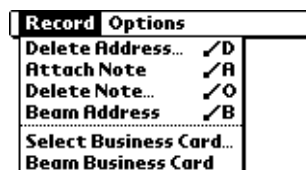
Record menu

The commands in the Record menu vary depending on which screen is open.

If the Address screen is open



If Address View is open



- | | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Delete Address | Remove an Address Book entry. In the alert dialog, tap OK to delete the entry. The entry is removed from the Address Book, but a copy is sent to an archive file on your computer during your next HotSync operation. To delete the entry completely, remove the check mark from the Save archive copy on PC check box. |
| Attach Note | Create a note for the current entry. |
| Delete Note | Remove a note attached to an Address Book entry. In the alert dialog, tap OK to delete the note or Cancel to keep the note. |
| Beam Address | Beam the current Address Book entry to another Kyocera smartphone through the IR port. |
| Beam Category | Beam all Address Book entries in the current category to another Kyocera smartphone through the IR port. |
| Select Business Card | Select the current entry as your business card. To beam your business card, use the Beam Business Card command. |
| Beam Business Card | Send the current business card to another Kyocera smartphone through the IR port. You can also beam your business card by holding down the Address Book button for at least two seconds. |

Options menu

The commands on the Options menu vary depending on which screen is open.

If the Address screen is open



If Address View is open

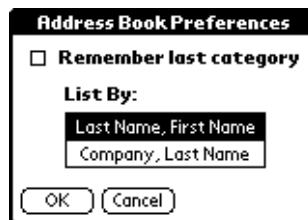


Font

Choose a different font (text) style for your entries.

Preferences

Set how you want the Address Book to list information.

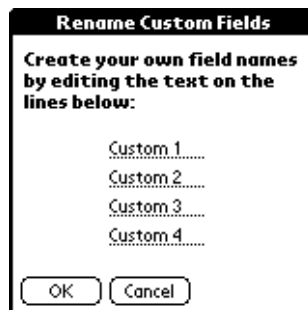


Remember last category—If you select this check box, the Address Book shows the last category you used when you return to it from another application. If you clear it, the Address Book shows the entries for all categories.

List By—Sort address entries by last name or by company.

Rename Custom Fields

Create your own names for the four custom fields. Your changes apply to all of your Address Book entries.



Security

Select Show records, mask records, or hide records.

About Address Book Show version information for the Address Book application.

Launch Speed Dial Open the Speed Dial application.

Launch Voice Dial Open the Voice Dial application.



Call History and the Recent Calls List

Your Kyocera smartphone keeps a record of your incoming, outgoing, and missed phone calls. You can see exactly when someone called you and you can return the call directly. There are two ways to view this information

Call History—When the flip is open, you can see your 99 most recent calls in the Call History application. You can adjust this number as high as 999 if you choose. In Call History, duplicate calls are retained; if you bill for your phone time, you can easily track data about your calls and export it to the Expense application.

Recent Calls List—When the flip is closed, you can see 30 calls in the Recent Calls list. In this list, duplicate calls are removed. Using this list, you can quickly locate recent numbers and return the calls.

In this chapter

- Opening lists of your recent calls page 109
- Making a call from Call History page 110
- Viewing your calls page 111
- Creating an expense record page 114
- Using the menus in Call History page 116

Opening lists of your recent calls

You can open a list of calls you have sent, received, or missed with the flip open or closed. When the flip is open, you can see 99 calls in the Call History application. When the flip is closed, you can see 30 calls in the Recent Calls list.

To open Call History

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Call History list.

Call History			All
Who	When	Length	
 Home	9/28	04:02	
 Home	9/28	09:45	
 Mom and Dad	9/28	14:03	
 Unknown	9/28	00:00	
 Manning, P. R.	9/26	08:28	
 Parsons, B.	9/17	02:52	
 5551234	9/16	01:30	
 5552345	9/13	05:21	
 Jen's school	9/13	10:15	
 Vendor, J. J.	9/13	01:08	
 Sample, Mark	9/13	03:16	

The icons show what type of call was made:

-  Incoming call
-  Outgoing call
-  Missed call
-  Data call (for example, a call to a Web site)

The screen shows the calls you have made or received, including the date, time, and length. If the phone number is in your Address Book, the contact name appears in the Who column. Otherwise, the Who column displays the phone number. If you haven't made or received any calls yet, the Call History screen is empty.

If you synchronize more than one Kyocera Smartphone with the same user name, the Call History screen displays calls from all of them.

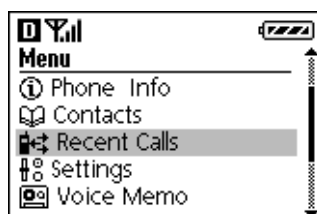
NOTE: Call History does not necessarily reflect all calls made on your phone. Synchronizing the phone with more than one user and/or resetting the phone can both affect the history.

To open the Recent Calls list

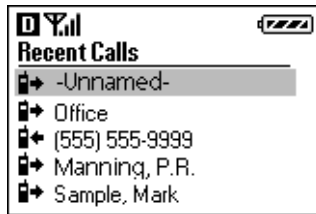
PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

1. From the home screen, press the shuttle in to open the menus.



- Roll the shuttle down until **Recent Calls** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.



- Roll the shuttle up or down to move through the list of calls.
- To return a call, highlight the entry and press the shuttle in. Press .
- To save a phone number and put it in your Address Book, roll the shuttle up or down until **Save** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.
- To exit Recent Calls, press  to move up one menu at a time, or press  to return to the home screen.

Making a call from Call History

You can quickly return a phone call directly from either of the lists that show the calls you have received.

To make a call from Call History

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Open

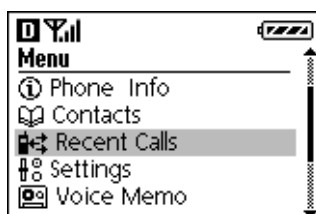
- Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
- Tap  to open the Call History list.
- To dial the number immediately, tap the phone icon to the right of the number you want to call.
- To see more information before placing the call, tap the entry to open the Details screen. To dial the number, tap **Dial**.

To make a call from the Recent Calls list

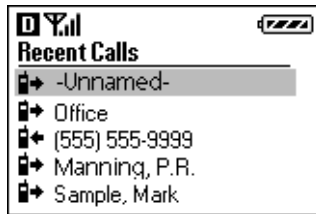
PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

- From the home screen, press the shuttle in to open the menus.



- Roll the shuttle down until **Recent Calls** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.



- Press the shuttle up or down to move through the list of calls.
- When the call you want to return is highlighted, press .

Viewing your calls

Call History is a valuable tool for keeping track of your incoming and outgoing calls. You can view calls by category, sort the Call History list, copy information from it into the Address Book or the Clipboard, and delete entries.

To view calls by category

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

You can quickly view the calls in Call History by their category (for example, only calls you have missed).

- Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
- Tap  to open the Call History list.
- Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner.
- From the list, select **All**, **Incoming**, **Outgoing**, or **Missed**.

The screen displays calls in that category only.

NOTE: The Recent category is the same as the Recent Calls list you see when the flip is closed. It includes the last 30 unique phone numbers of incoming, outgoing, and missed calls. Each number is listed only once; duplicate numbers are deleted (oldest first). For example, if you called the same number four times, only the most recent of these calls is listed.

To sort the Call History list

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

With a single click, you can sort the Call History list by the name or phone number of the caller, by date and time, or by length of call. No matter which sequence you choose, new calls automatically appear at the top of the list.

- Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.

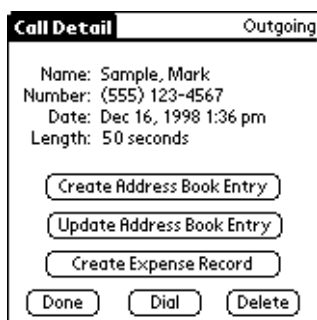
2. Tap  to open the Call History list.
3. To list calls in alphanumeric order by name and phone number, tap **Who** in the column heading. Tap **Who** again to reverse the sort order.
4. To list calls by date, tap **Date** in the column heading. Calls are listed by date, with all the calls on a single day listed by time. For calls received or made during the current day, only the time is displayed, not the date. For previous calls, both the date and time are listed; expand the column to see all of the information. Tap **Date** again to resort the list based on the most recent time.
5. To list calls in order from longest to shortest, tap **Length** in the column heading. Tap **Length** again to resort the list from shortest call to longest call.

To copy information from Call History to the Address Book

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Call History list.
3. Tap the entry you want to add to (or modify) in the Address Book. The Call Detail dialog appears.



4. Do one of the following:
 - To add a new entry, tap **Create Address Book Entry**. Tap **OK** in the confirmation dialog. The Address Details screen appears where you can verify or change the entry.
 - To change an existing entry, tap **Update Address Book Entry**. In the confirmation message, tap **OK**. The Address Book appears where you can verify or change the entry.

To copy information from Call History to the Clipboard

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Call History list.

3. Tap the entry you want to copy.
4. Tap  to open the Call History menus.
5. From the Record menu, tap **Copy Number to Clipboard**.

Deleting calls

To delete one entry

PHONE  On

FLIP  Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Call History list.
3. Tap the entry you want to delete.
4. Tap **Delete**. The call is removed from the list.

To delete a group of entries

PHONE  On

FLIP  Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Call History list.
3. Drag the stylus through the entries you want to delete.
4. From the Call History list, tap  to open the menus.
5. From the Record menu, tap **Delete Selected Calls**. The highlighted calls are removed from your Call History list.

To delete all entries

PHONE  On

FLIP  Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Call History list.
3. From the Call History list, tap  to open the menus.
4. From the Record menu, tap **Delete All Calls**. All the calls are removed from both the Call History list and the Recent Calls list.

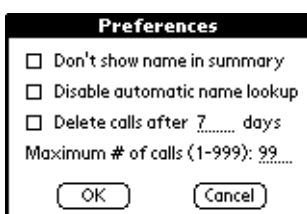
Setting up your preferences in Call History

To define Call History preferences

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Call History list.
3. In the Call History application, tap .
4. From the Options menu, tap **Preferences**.



5. If you don't want caller names to appear in the Who column even if this information is available, tap **Don't show name in summary**.
6. To delete calls after a specific number of days, tap **Delete calls after ____ days**. Enter the number of days on the line.
7. To set the maximum number of calls to be listed in Call History, enter a number between 1 and 999 on the Maximum # of Calls line.
8. Tap **OK** when you have finished.

Creating an expense record

If you need to keep a financial record of your calls for billing or expense reports, you can generate an expense record from Call History. The calls you select are copied to the Expense application where you can edit them, place them in categories, and export them to Microsoft Excel.

To create an expense record

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Call History list.

3. Tap a call you want to track on your expense record. The Call Detail screen appears.

Call Detail Outgoing

Name: Sample, Mark
 Number: (555) 123-4567
 Date: Dec 16, 1998 1:36 pm
 Length: 50 seconds

4. Tap **Create Expense Record**.

Create Expense Record i

Expense category: ▼ Unfiled
 Cost per ▼ hour ▼ \$ 15.00
 Estimated duration: 1 minutes
 Notes:
 Outgoing call to (555) 555-5555 at
 Dec 16, 2000 3:39 pm, duration
 <duration>, rate <rate> per
 <unit>

5. Tap the Expense category pick list and select the appropriate category for this call.
6. Tap the Cost pick list and select hour or minute. Select the unit of currency. Enter the amount to be charged per hour or minute.

NOTE: You can change the default settings in the category and cost fields using the Options menu. See "Options menu" on page 117.

7. If necessary, change the estimated duration of the call (for example, if you spent billable time before or after the call that you want to include).
8. Enter any additional information you want to record (for example, the purpose or subject of the call) in the Notes area. The text you write here will appear as a Note in the Expense record of this call.
9. Tap **Create**.
10. Tap **Done**.

Information about this call is moved to the Expense application where you can edit it and export it to Microsoft Excel. For details, see Chapter 8, "Expense."

Using the menus in Call History

This section outlines menu commands specific to Call History.

Record menu

The commands on the Record menu vary depending on which screen is open.

From Call History

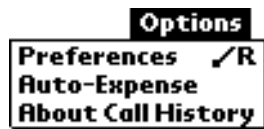


From Call Details



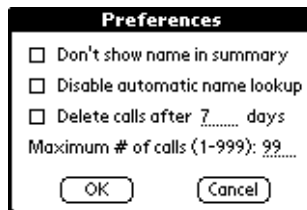
Delete All Calls	Remove all records from the Call History list (flip open) and the Recent Calls list (flip closed).
Delete Selected Calls	Remove highlighted records from the Call History list. Notice that this option does not remove the records from the Recent Calls list.
Look Up Names	From the Call History screen, scan the Address Book to update the information in Call History. If you have made a number of changes to your Address Book, you can select this menu option to refresh the information in Call History. Note that if you have 250 or more names in the Address Book, you may want to turn off this feature to increase the performance speed of Call History.
Copy Number to Clipboard	From the Call Details screen, copy information from a call to your Address Book.
Look up Name in Address Book	From the Call Details screen, scan the Address Book for an entry that matches this number. The Kyocera Smartphone makes this scan automatically after each call. However, if you have made a number of changes to your Address Book, you can select this menu option to update information in Call History.

Options menu



Preferences

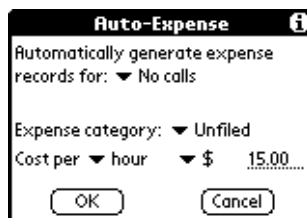
Manage the way calls are handled by Call History.



- n Display phone numbers only, without names.
- n Disable the lookup feature that updates Call History with names from the Address Book. If you have more than 250 names in the Address Book, it is recommended that you disable automatic lookup to improve phone performance.
- n Delete calls after X days.
- n Set the maximum number of calls to be kept in Call History.

Auto-Expense

Automatically generate expense reports based on your incoming or outgoing calls.



- n Generate reports for all calls or for calls in a category.
- n Enter your cost per minute or hour in any currency you have set up.

About Call History

View version information for the Call History application.

Chapter 7



Date Book

Using the Date Book, you can quickly and easily schedule appointments or any kind of activity associated with a specific time and date.

In this chapter

- Scheduling events in the Date Book page 120
- Scheduling repeating events page 124
- Deleting an event page 126
- Changing the Date Book view page 128
- Using the Date Book menus page 132

Scheduling events in the Date Book

An event is any activity that you schedule for a particular day. When you create an event, its description appears on the time line, and its duration is set to one hour. You can easily change the start time and duration for any event.

You can also include events in your Date Book that have no start or end time, such as birthdays, holidays, and anniversaries. These *untimed events* appear at the top of the Date Book screen and are noted by a diamond.

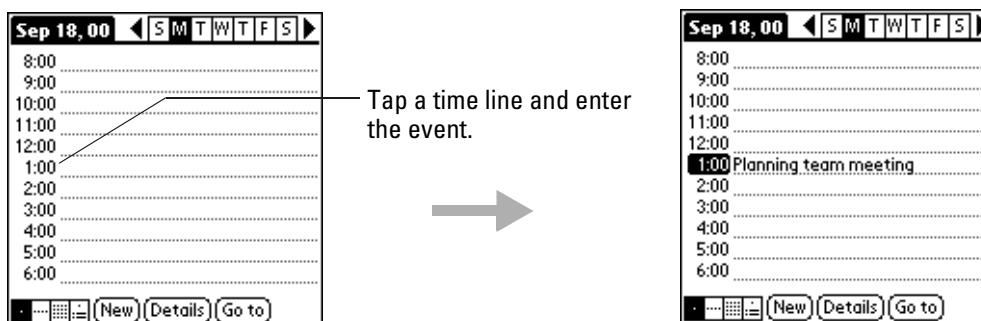
To schedule an event for the current day

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

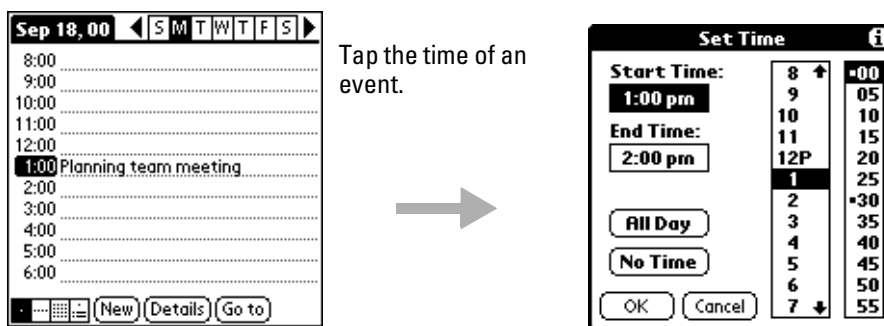
FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the Date Book  key.
2. Tap the time at which you want the event to begin.

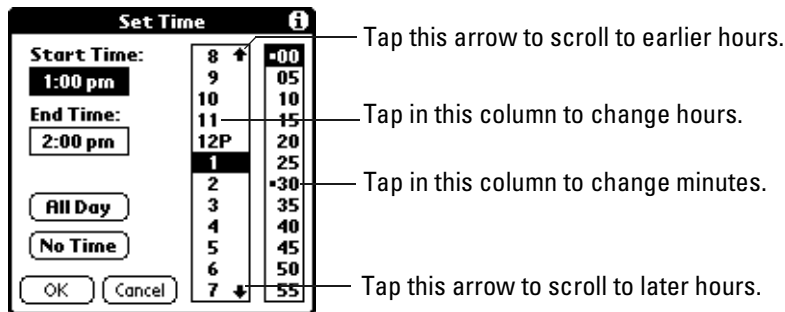
You can also select a starting time for an appointment by making sure that no event is selected, and then writing a number on the number side of the Graffiti writing area.



3. Enter information about the event.
4. To set the length of the event, do one of the following:
 - If your appointment is longer or shorter than an hour, tap the time of the event to open the Set Time dialog.
 - If your appointment is exactly one hour long, skip to step 8. Date book events are set at one hour by default.



- Tap the appropriate hour and minute in the time columns on the right side of the dialog to set the Start Time.



- To schedule the event for the entire day, tap **All Day**.
- To schedule a specific ending time, tap the **End Time** box. Tap the appropriate hour and minute in the time columns.
- Tap **OK**.

To schedule an event for another day

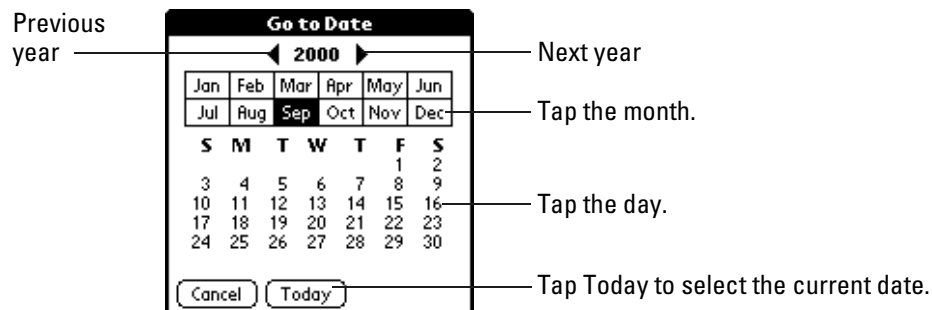
PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

- Press the Date Book  key.
- Select the date you want for the event by doing one of the following:
 - Tap the day of the week you want to choose in the Date Bar at the top of the Date Book screen. Tap the left arrow to move to the previous week or the right arrow to move to the next week.



- Press the scroll up key to move to the previous day or the scroll down key to move to the next day.
- Tap **Go To** to open the Go to Date dialog. Select a date by tapping a year, month, and day in the calendar.



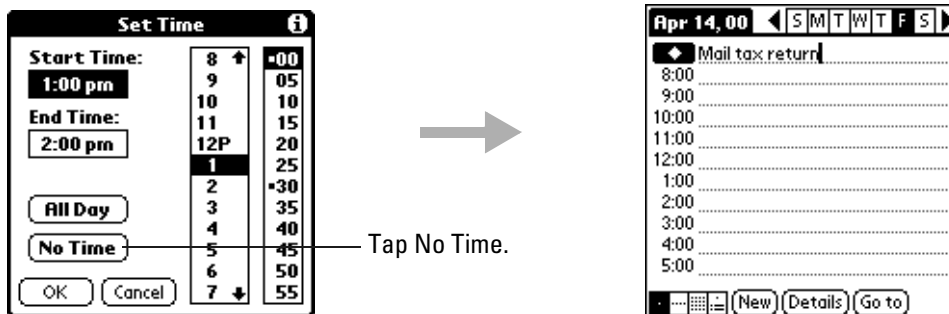
- After you locate the date, follow the steps in the previous section, "To schedule an event for the current day"

To schedule an untimed event

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the Date Book  key.
2. Select the date and Tap **New**.
3. Tap **No Time**.



The cursor appears beside a diamond on the top line. The diamond indicates an untimed event for that day.

4. Enter a description for the event.
5. Tap a blank area on the screen to deselect the untimed event.

NOTE: If you create an event and decide later that it has no particular start or end time, you can easily change it to an untimed event. Tap the time of the event in the Date Book screen, tap **No Time**, and then tap **OK**.

To reschedule an event

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the Date Book  key.
2. Tap the event you want to reschedule.
3. Tap **Details** to open the Event Details dialog for that event.
4. Tap the **Time** box. Select the new time.
5. Tap the **Date** box. Select the new date.
6. Tap **OK** to return to the Date Book screen.

Setting an alarm for an event

You can set an audible alarm to remind yourself of upcoming events. The alarm sounds even if the phone is turned off.

The default alarm setting is five minutes before an event, but you can change this time period to any number of minutes, hours, or days. When you set an alarm, appears to the far right of the event.

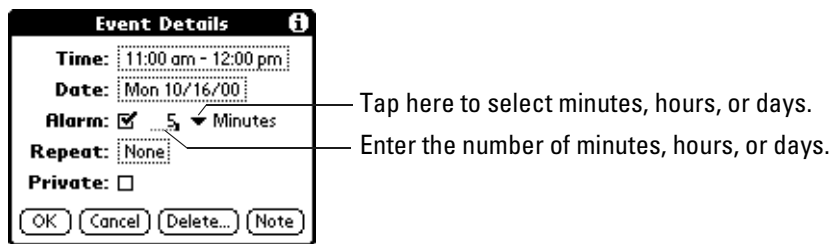
When the alarm tone sounds, a reminder message appears on the screen. If the phone is turned on, this message (including the event date or time) appears whether the flip is open or closed.

To set an alarm for an event

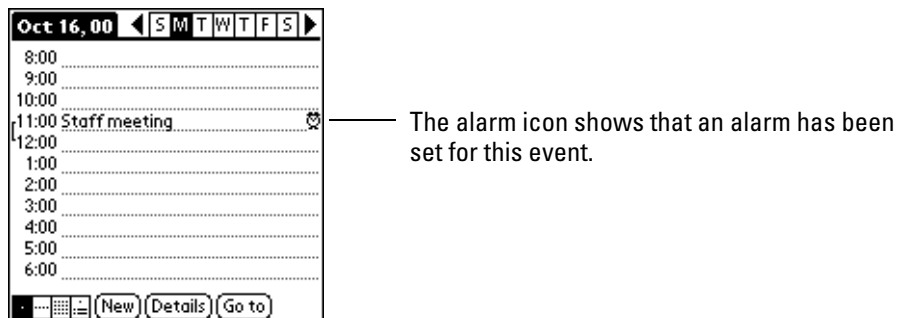
PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the Date Book  key.
2. Tap the event to which you want to assign an alarm.
3. Tap **Details** to open the Event Details dialog for that event.



4. To activate the alarm, tap the Alarm check box.
5. Tap ▼ to select Minutes, Hours, or Days.
6. Enter any number from 0 to 99 (inclusive) as the numeric alarm setting.
7. Tap **OK** to return to the Date Book screen.



NOTE: If you set an alarm for an untimed event, the alarm sounds a tone at the specified number of minutes, hours, or days before midnight of that day. A reminder message remains on the screen until you tap OK.

Marking a private event

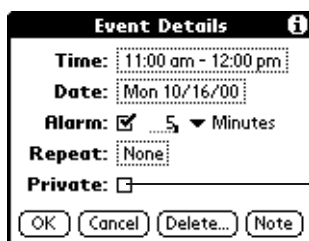
You can designate events as “private.” When you activate the Security features, the Kyocera smartphone hides all private entries. You must enter a password to see them.

To mark an event as private

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the Date Book  key.
2. Tap the event you want to mark as private.
3. Tap **Details** to open the Event Details dialog for that event.



The Event Details dialog box is shown with the following fields: Time (11:00 am - 12:00 pm), Date (Mon 10/16/00), Alarm (checked, 5 minutes), Repeat (None), and Private (unchecked). At the bottom are buttons for OK, Cancel, Delete..., and Note. An arrow points to the Private checkbox with the text 'Tap here to make an event private.'

4. Tap the **Private** check box.
5. Tap **OK** to return to the Date Book screen.

Scheduling repeating events

You can easily set up repeating events such as weekly meetings or birthdays. After you enter a repeating event,  appears to the far right of the event.

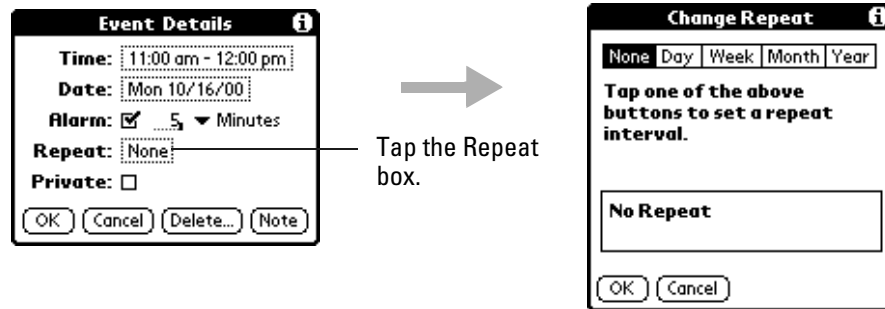
To schedule a repeating event

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the Date Book  key.
2. Enter a new event or tap anywhere on the text of an existing event you want to repeat.
3. Tap **Details** to open the Event Details dialog.

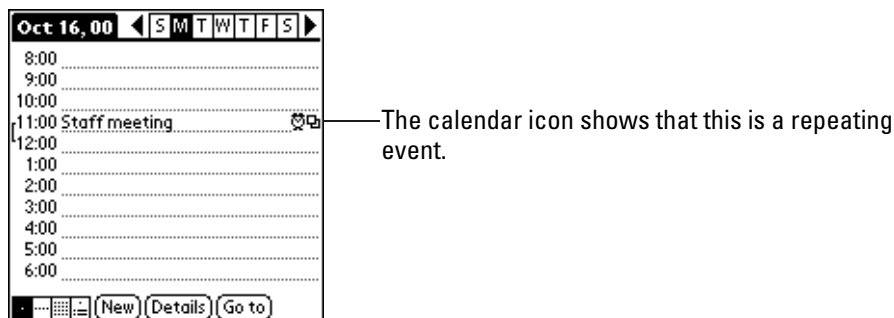
4. Tap **Repeat** to open the Change Repeat dialog.



5. Tap **Day, Week, Month** or **Year** in the Change Repeat dialog.



6. In the Every line, write how frequently the event repeats. For example, if you select Week and enter 2, the event repeats every other week.
7. To specify an ending date, tap the ▼ beside End. Tap **Choose Date**.
8. On the calendar, tap the end date.
9. Tap **OK** to activate your settings.



Considerations for repeating events

When you schedule or change a repeating event, be aware of the following:

- If you change the start date, the Kyocera smartphone calculates the number of days you have moved the event and changes the end date to maintain the same duration.
- If you change the repeat type (for example, daily to weekly), a new repeating event is created. Past occurrences are not changed.

- If you change the date and apply the change to all occurrences, the new date becomes the start date of the repeating event. The end date is adjusted to maintain the same duration.
- If you change other repeat settings (such as time, alarm, or private) and apply the change to all occurrences, a new event is created. The start date is the day you made the changes. Past occurrences are not changed.
- If you make a change to one occurrence of a repeating event (such as time), that occurrence no longer shows the Repeat icon.

Deleting an event

There are three ways to delete an event from the Date Book application. If you are deleting a single event, you can use any of these three methods. If you are deleting a repeating event, two of the methods allow you to choose which occurrences of the event you want to remove.

To delete a single event Use any of these methods:

- Erase the text.
- Tap Delete in the Record menu.
- Tap Delete in the Event Details dialog.

To delete a recurring event Use either of these methods:

- Tap Delete in the Record menu.
- Tap Delete in the Event Details dialog.

To delete an event by erasing the text

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off
FLIP ➤ Open

If you erase one instance of a recurring event, all instances of the event are removed.

1. Press the Date Book  key.
2. Tap anywhere in the text area of the event you want to delete.
3. Drag the stylus through the text to highlight it.
4. Draw the backspace stroke  to erase the text.

To delete an event using the menus

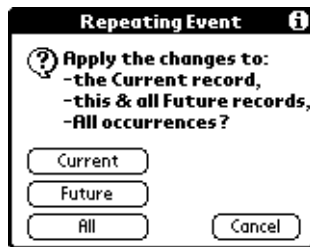
PHONE ➤ May be either on or off
FLIP ➤ Open

You can choose to delete only one occurrence or all occurrences of the event.

1. Press the Date Book  key.

2. Tap anywhere in the text area of the event you want to delete.
3. Tap the Menu  icon.
4. From the Record menu, tap **Delete Event**.

If you have selected a repeating event, the Repeating Event dialog appears.



5. Select which events you want to delete.
 - Tap **Current** to delete only the single event you selected.
 - Tap **Future** to delete the event you selected and all future occurrences.
 - Tap **All** to delete all occurrences, including those in the past.
6. Tap **OK** in the Delete Event dialog to confirm your choice.

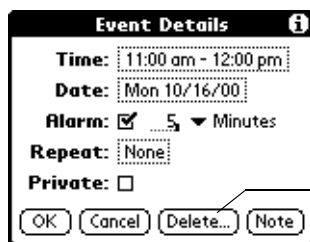
To delete an event using the Details dialog

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

You can choose to delete only one occurrence or all occurrences of the event.

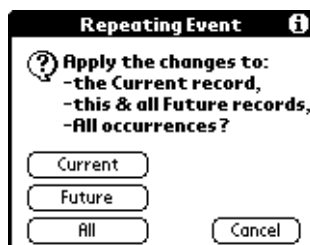
1. Press the Date Book  key.
2. Tap anywhere in the text area of the event you want to delete.
3. Tap **Details** to open the Event Details dialog.



Tap Delete.

4. Tap **Delete**.

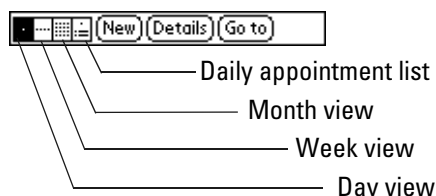
If you have selected a repeating event, the Repeating Event dialog appears.



5. Select which events you want to delete.
 - Tap **Current** to delete only the single event you selected.
 - Tap **Future** to delete the event you selected and all future occurrences.
 - Tap **All** to delete all occurrences, including those in the past.
6. Tap **OK** in the Delete Event dialog to confirm your choice.

Changing the Date Book view

In addition to displaying the calendar for a specific day, you can also view your Date Book by the week or month, and you can display a list of appointments.



To toggle through the views

Press the Date Book  key repeatedly to display the next view.

To display the current time

Tap the date in the Date Book title bar to display the current time.



After a few seconds, the title bar reverts to show the date.

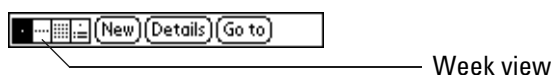
To display and use Week view

PHONE May be either on or off

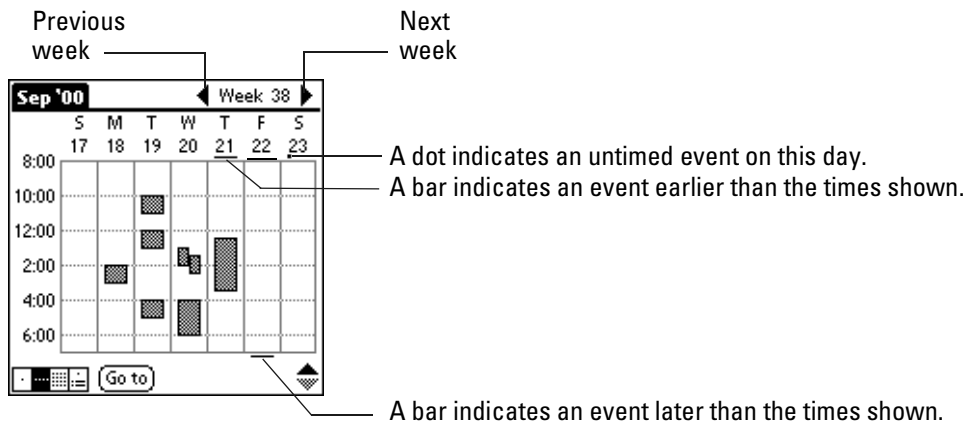
FLIP Open

1. Press the Date Book  key.
2. Tap the Week view box at the bottom of the screen.

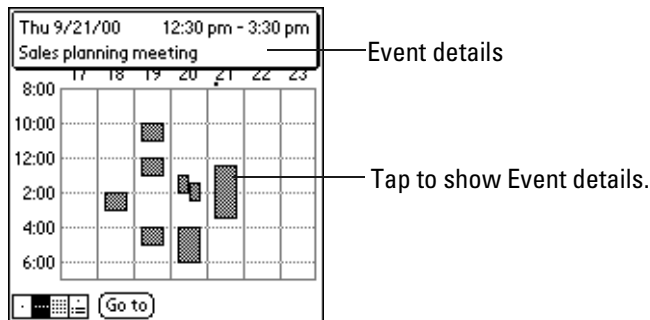
The Week view shows a chart of your events for an entire week so you can quickly review your appointments and available time slots. In addition, the graphical display helps you spot overlaps and conflicts in your schedule.



- Tap the navigation controls to move forward or backward a week at a time, or to display details of an event. The Week view also shows untimed events and events that are before and after the range of times shown.



- Tap any of your events to show a description of the event.

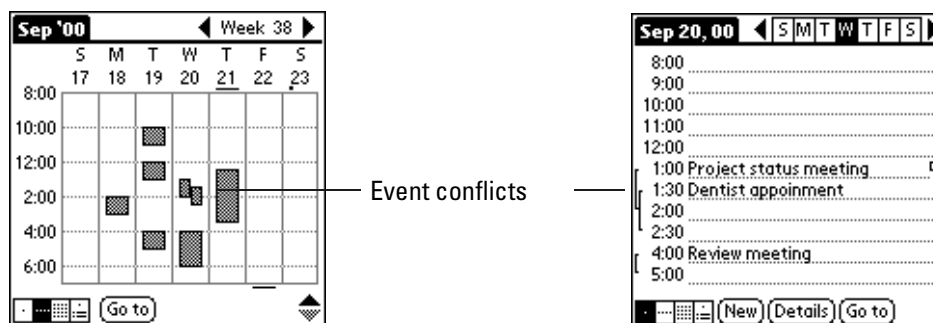


- To reschedule an event, tap and drag the event to a different time or day. You can tap a blank time on any day to move to that day and time. Or you can tap any of the days and dates that appear at the top of the Week View to move directly to that day without selecting an event.

NOTE: The Week View shows the time span defined by the Start Time and End Time in the Date Book Preferences settings. If you have an event before or after this time span, a bar appears at the top or bottom of that day's column. The  on-screen scroll arrows appear if your scheduled events go beyond the displayed time range.

Spotting event conflicts

With the ability to define specific start and end times for any event, it's possible to schedule events that overlap. In this case, any event conflict (time overlap) appears in the Week View as overlapping bars. The Day View displays bracketed bars to the left of the conflicting times.

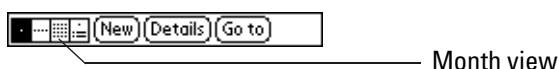


To display and use Month view

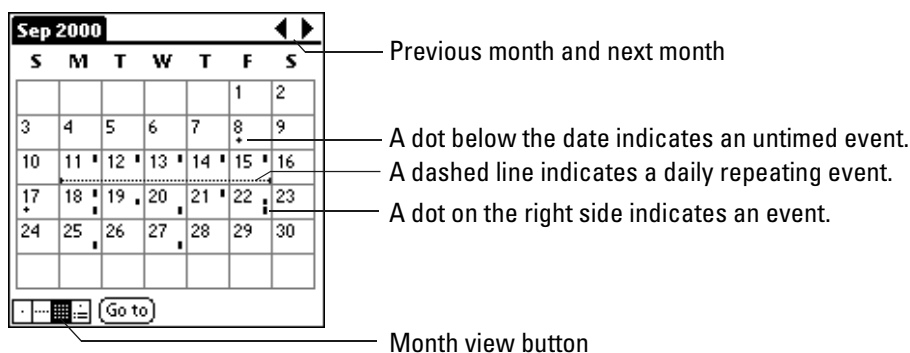
PHONE ➔ May be either on or off

FLIP ➔ Open

1. Press the Date Book  key.
2. Tap the Month view button at the bottom of the screen.



The Month view screen shows which days have events scheduled. Dots and lines in the Month view indicate events, repeating events, and untimed events.



3. Tap any day that appears in the Month View screen to move directly to the Day View screen for that day.
4. Tap the arrows at the top of the screen to move forward or backward a month.
5. Tap **Go To** to open the Date Picker and choose a different month.
6. When the Month View is on the screen, press the scroll up and scroll down keys to move between months.

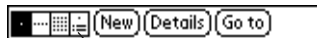
NOTE: To modify the dots and lines that appear in the Month View, use the Options menu. See page 133.

To display the daily appointment list

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

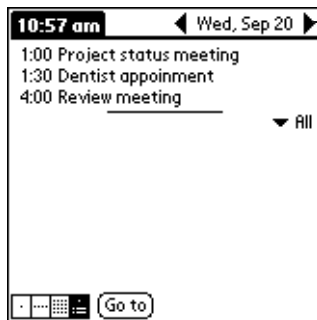
FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the Date Book  key.
2. Select the day you want to see an appointment list for.
3. Tap the Appointment box at the bottom of the screen.



Appointment view

The appointment list shows the scheduled events for the day.



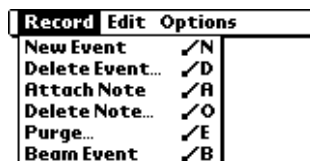
Previous day and next day

4. Tap the arrows at the top of the screen to move to the previous or next day.

Using the Date Book menus

This section explains the menu commands that are specific to the Date Book. See “Using menus” on page 59 for information about menu commands common to all applications.

Record menu



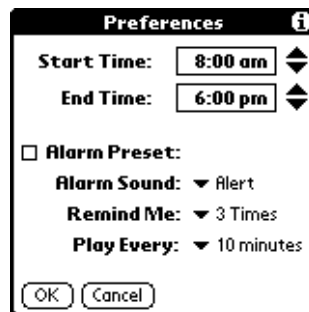
- | | |
|---------------------|---|
| New Event | Create an event. The Set Time dialog appears, where you can choose start and end times for the new event. If you do not enter start and end times, the event is untimed. |
| Delete Event | <p>Remove an event from the Date Book. In the confirmation dialog, tap OK to delete the event or Cancel to keep it. You must tap an event before you use the Delete Event command.</p> <p>When you delete a recurring event, you have the choice of removing a single event only, the current and all future occurrences, or all occurrences.</p> <p>By default, the event is removed from the Date Book, but a copy is transferred to an archive file on your computer during your next HotSync operation. To remove the event completely, uncheck the Save archive copy on PC check box.</p> |
| Attach Note | Create a note for the current event. |
| Delete Note | Delete the note attached to an event. In the confirmation dialog, tap OK to delete the note or Cancel to save it. |
| Purge | <p>Remove events older than a certain time to conserve memory.</p> <p>By default, the events are removed from the Date Book, but copies are transferred to an archive file on your computer during your next HotSync operation. To remove the event completely, uncheck the Save archive copy on PC check box.</p> <p>The Purge command deletes repeating events if they <i>end</i> before the date that you activate the Purge command.</p> |
| Beam Event | Beam the current event to another device with an infrared port. See “Beaming information” on page 91. |

Options menu



Font Choose a font (text) style for your Date Book entries. See “Choosing fonts” on page 61.

Preferences Set preferences for Date Book times and alarms.



Start/End Time sets the start and end times for the screen.

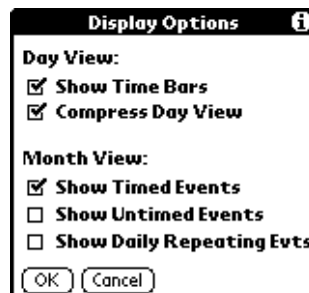
Alarm Preset automatically sets an alarm for each new event.

Alarm Sound controls the type of tone the alarm generates.

Remind Me defines how many times the alarm sounds. The choices are 1, 2, 3, 5, and 10 times.

Play Every defines how often the alarm sounds. The choices are 1, 5, 10, and 30 minutes.

Display Options Change the Date Book’s appearance and the events that appear.



Show Time Bars turns on time bars in the Day View. Time bars show the duration of events and illustrate event conflicts.

Compress Day View controls how times appear in the Day View. If you remove the check mark, all time slots appear. If you check it, start and end times for each event appear, but blank time slots at the bottom of the screen disappear.

Check any or all of the **Month View Settings** to show timed, untimed, or daily repeating events in the month view.

Phone Lookup Search for a phone number and paste it into a Date Book event. See “Looking up information on your phone” on page 42.

About Date Book Show version information for the Date Book application.

Chapter 8



Expense

The Expense application enables you to keep track of your expenses and then transfer the information to a spreadsheet on your computer.

Using this application, you can keep records of your expenses (including dates, amounts spent, payment methods, categories, and other details) that you can then transfer to a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet (version 5.0 or later) on your computer. (Please note that Microsoft Excel is *not* included with the Kyocera smartphone package.)

In this chapter

- Creating an Expense item page 135
- Entering or modifying receipt details page 136
- Printing expense reports page 140
- Transferring your data to an Excel spreadsheet page 141
- Sample expense report templates page 143
- Customizing the templates page 147
- Using the Expense menus page 153

Creating an Expense item

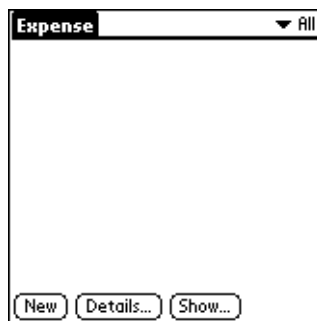
Using the Expense application, you can record the date, expense type, and amount spent on an item; sort your expense items into categories; and add other information.

To create a new expense item

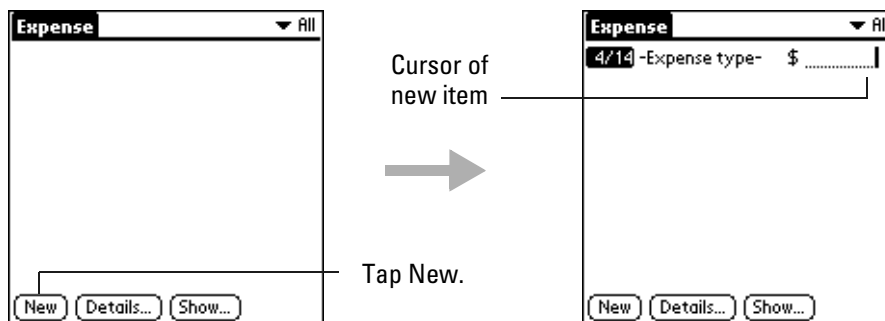
PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

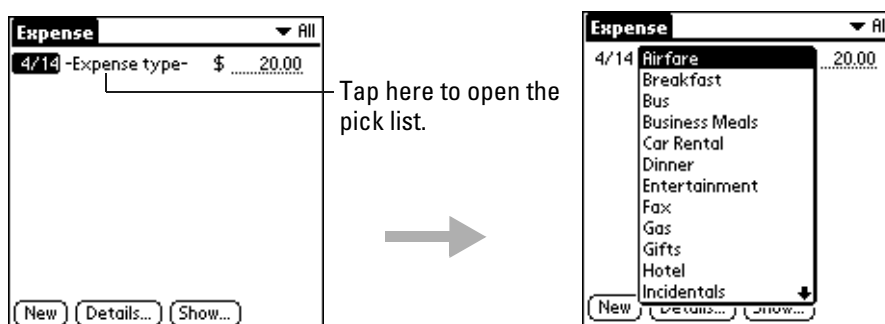
1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to display the Expense List screen.



3. Tap New.



4. Enter the amount of the expense.
5. Tap **Expense type** and select a type from the pick list.



As soon as you select an expense type, your Kyocera smartphone saves your entry. If you do not select an expense type, it does not save the entry.

NOTE: A quick way to create a new expense item is to make sure that no expense item is selected in the list, write the first letter(s) of the expense type, and then write the expense amount. The automatic fill feature completes the information. See "Options Menu" on page 154.

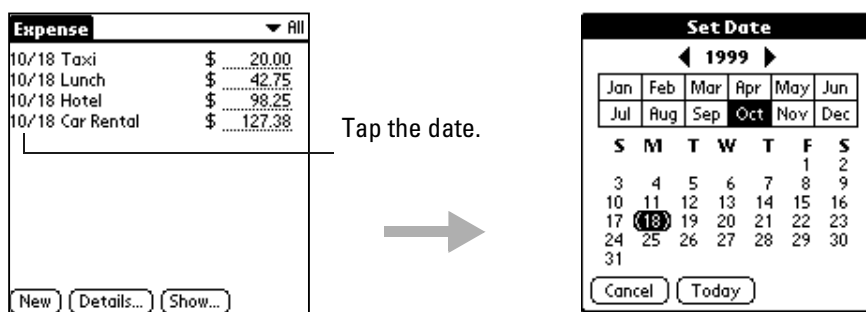
To change the date of an expense item

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

Initially, expense items appear with the date you enter them on the Kyocera smartphone. You can use the Expense application to change the date associated with any expense item.

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to display the Expense List screen.
3. Tap the expense item you want to modify.
4. Tap the date of the selected item.



5. Tap the date you want to use for the expense item.

Entering or modifying receipt details

To enter or change the details for a receipt

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to display the Expense List screen.
3. Tap the expense item you want to modify.

4. Tap Details.

5. Select any of the following options:

- Category** Select a category for this item. Two sample categories (New York and Paris) are included to show how you might sort your expenses by business trips. Choose Edit Categories from the pick list to create new categories or change existing ones.
- Type** Select the expense type.
- Payment** Set the payment method. If the item is prepaid (such as airline tickets supplied by your company), choose Prepaid to place the expense correctly in the expense report. See “Transferring your data to an Excel spreadsheet” on page 141.
- Currency** Set the type of currency for this item.
To change the default currency, see “Options Menu” on page 154. You can also display up to four other common types of currency. See “To customize the Currency pick list” on page 138.
- Vendor and City** Record the name of the vendor associated with the expense and the city where the expense was incurred. For example, a business lunch might be at Rosie's Cafe (Vendor) in San Francisco (City).
- Attendees** Display the Attendees screen, which resembles a memo in the Memo Pad. Use this screen to list the people who attended the event or to make any other notes about the expense.



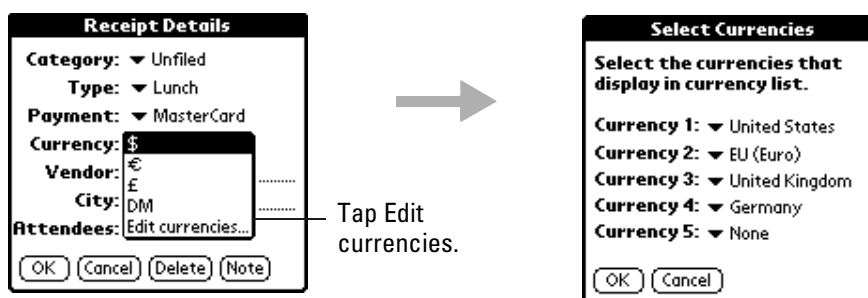
6. Tap **Lookup** to display the names and companies of people in your Address Book.
7. Tap **OK** to activate your selections.

To customize the Currency pick list

PHONE May be either on or off

FLIP Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to display the Expense List screen.
3. Tap an expense item.
4. Tap **Details**.
5. In the Receipt Details dialog, tap the Currency pick list.
6. Tap **Edit currencies**.



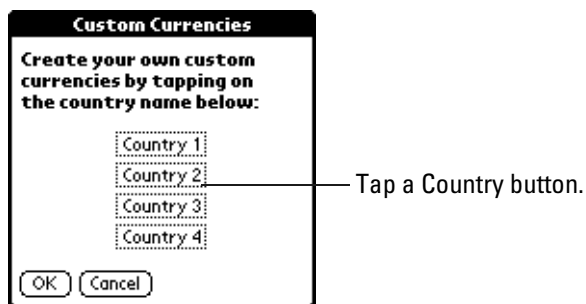
7. Tap each Currency pick list to choose the country or region whose currency you want to display on that line.
8. Tap OK to activate your selections.

If the correct currency is not in the list of countries, you can create your own country and currency symbol. See the next section, "Setting up a custom currency symbol."

Setting up a custom currency symbol

To define a custom currency symbol

1. From the Expenses screen, tap  to open the Expenses menu.
2. Choose Custom Currencies from the Options menu.



3. Tap one of the Country boxes to open the Currency Properties dialog.



A dialog box titled "Currency Properties" with two text input fields: "Country:" and "Symbol:". At the bottom are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

4. Enter the name of the country and the symbol you want to appear in the Expense application. Tap **OK**.
5. Tap **OK** to close the Custom Currencies dialog.

NOTE: To use your custom currency symbol as the default for all Expense entries, choose the symbol in the Preferences dialog. To use your custom currency symbol only for particular expense items, choose the symbol in the Receipt Details dialog associated with those items.

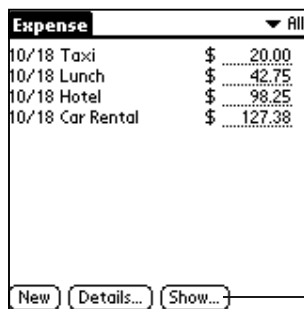
To set the Show options

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

The Show options set the sort order of your expense items, as well as identifying how mileage and currency should be displayed.

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to display the Expense List screen.
3. Tap **Show**.



The Expense List screen shows a table of expenses. At the top is a header "Expense" with a dropdown arrow and the word "All". The table has two columns: the first column lists the date and item, and the second column shows the amount with a dollar sign. At the bottom are three buttons: "New", "Details...", and "Show...".

Expense	Amount
10/18 Taxi	\$ 20.00
10/18 Lunch	\$ 42.75
10/18 Hotel	\$ 98.25
10/18 Car Rental	\$ 127.38




A dialog box titled "Show Options" with an information icon in the top right corner. It contains three settings: "Sort by: ▼ Date", "Distance: ▼ Miles", and a checked checkbox for "Show currency". At the bottom are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

Tap Show.

4. Select any of the following options:
 - Sort By** Sort the Expense entries by date or expense type.
 - Distance** Display Mileage entries in miles or kilometers.
 - Show Currency** Show or hide the currency symbol in the expense list.
5. Tap **OK**.

Printing expense reports

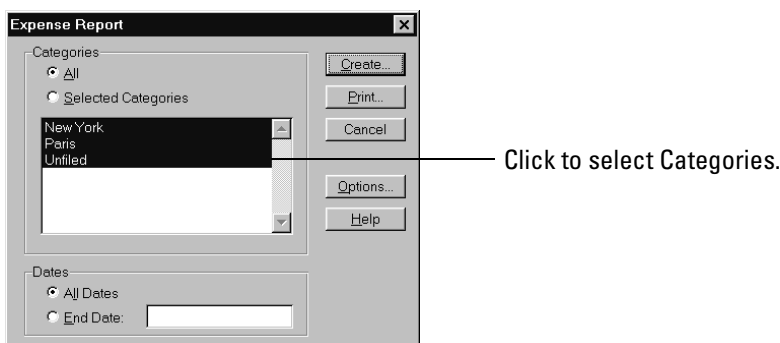
After you enter your expenses in the Expense application on your Kyocera smartphone, you can view and print the data on your computer using the Kyocera smartphone Desktop software and Microsoft Excel (version 5.0 or later).

NOTE: Please be aware that Microsoft Excel is not included with the Kyocera smartphone.

The procedures in this section assume that you have installed the Kyocera smartphone Desktop. If you have not yet installed this software, see “Installing Kyocera smartphone Desktop software” on page 71.

To print your expense report

1. Perform a HotSync operation to transfer your latest Expense data to your computer. For details, see “Synchronizing data using the sync cradle” on page 74.
2. On the computer, click **Expense** in the Kyocera smartphone Desktop to open Microsoft Excel and the Expense Report configuration dialog.
If you open Expense from the Start menu (instead of the Kyocera smartphone Desktop), you must first choose the user name.
3. Click the expense category that you want to print.



Shift+click to select multiple categories. To view the expenses for *all* of your Expense categories, click All in the Categories area.

4. To define an end date for the report, enter the date in the End Date area.
If you do not specify an end date, all expense entries for the selected categories will appear—up to the date of the last HotSync operation.

- Click **Print** to display the expense report in the Print Preview window.

- Click **Print** in the Microsoft Excel window to print your expense report.

Transferring your data to an Excel spreadsheet

If you have Microsoft Excel (version 5.0 or later), you can transfer expense data from your Kyocera smartphone to an Excel spreadsheet. The Kyocera smartphone Desktop software comes with several Excel templates you can use as they are or customize.

NOTE: Please be aware that Microsoft Excel is not included with the Kyocera smartphone.

To view your Expense data in a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet

- Perform a HotSync operation to transfer your latest Expense data to your computer and make it available to the Kyocera smartphone Desktop.
- Click **Expense** in the Kyocera smartphone Desktop to open Microsoft Excel and the Expense Report configuration dialog. If you open Expense from the Start menu (instead of the Desktop), choose the user name.

3. Click the expense category that you want to use. Shift+click to select multiple categories. To view the expenses for *all* categories, click All.
4. To define an end date for the report, enter the date in the End Date area.
If you do not specify an end date, *all* expense entries for the selected categories appear up to the date of the last HotSync operation.
5. Click Create to open a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet containing your data.

The screenshot shows a window titled 'SAMPLE16' with a form for 'Travel Expense Reimbursement'. The form includes fields for Employee Name, Client, Date Submitted (1/31/98), and Project. Below the form is a table with columns: Date, Country, Currency Amount, Exchange Rate, US Dollar Amount, Expense Type, and Note: D. The table contains one data row for 4/9/98, United States, with a currency amount of 39.15, an exchange rate of 1.00, and a US dollar amount of \$39.15, categorized as Mileage.

Travel Expense Reimbursement						
Employee Name:		Client:				
Date Submitted: 1/31/98		Project:				
Mls/Km Rate		0.29				
Date	Country	Currency Amount	Exchange Rate	US Dollar Amount	Expense Type	Note: D
4/9/98	United States	39.15	1.00	\$39.15	Mileage	

You can enter information, make formatting changes, save, and print the file in the normal manner.

Sample 2—

Sample2.xlt

	1	2	3	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24	25
1															
2	Travel Expense Report				Employee name				Employee number				Department		Date
3													2/3/98		
4					Travel								Date		
5															
6															
7															
8	Date:												TOTAL		
9	Bill to:												TOTAL		
10															
11	LODGING														
12	Lodging & Hotel														
13	Laundry														
14	Tips														
15	Lodging total														
16															
17	MEALS														
18	Breakfast														
19	Lunch & Snacks														
20	Dinner														
21	Meals total														
22															
23	BUSINESS														
24	Business meals														
25	Conference														
26	Entertainment														
27	Business total														
28															
29	TRANSPORTATION														
30	Airfare														
31	Auto Rental														
32	Auto Maint/Gas														
33	Local Transportation														
34	Tolls/Parking														
35	Miles @ \$\$\$\$ / mile														
36	Trans. total														
37															
38	MISCELLANEOUS														
39	Gifts														
40	Telephone & Fax														
41	Supplies														
42	Postage														
43	Other														
44	Misc. total														
45															
46															
47	TOTAL														
48															
49															
50															
51															
52															
53															
54															
55															
56															
57	Approved by				Emp #				Date						
58															
59	Approved by				Emp #				Date				Employee signature		
60															
61	Approved by				Emp #				Date				Employee signature		
62															
63															

Less cash advance

Due employee

Due company

Sample2

Sample 3—

Sample3.xlt

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
				Employee			Emp. I	Drpl.	Travel					Date
2														2/3/98
3														
4														
5														
6	ITINERARY	DATE												
7		CITY												
8		CITY											Co. Paid	Emp. Paid
9	Airfare	Company paid												
10		Employee paid												
11	Autorental + Gar	Company paid												
12		Employee paid												
13	Hotel & Lodging	Company paid												
14		Employee paid												
15	Bar, Limo, Taxi,	Company paid												
16	Train, and Subway	Employee paid												
17														
18	Mileage @	Company paid												
19	\$0.25 per mile	Employee paid												
20	Telephone & Fax	Company paid												
21		Employee paid												
22														
23	Laundry	Company paid												
24		Employee paid												
25	Breakfast	Company paid												
26		Employee paid												
27	Lunch & Snack	Company paid												
28		Employee paid												
29	Dinner	Company paid												
30		Employee paid												
31	Business meals	Company paid												
32	& entertainment	Employee paid												
33	Conference	Company paid												
34		Employee paid												
35	Partage	Company paid												
36		Employee paid												
37	Parking & Toll	Company paid												
38		Employee paid												
39	Gifts, Tips, Suppl	Company paid												
40	Incidental, Other	Employee paid												
41														
42														
43	Emp equalizer	Emp I	Date										Total Company paid	
44													Total Employee paid	
45	Approve equalizer	Emp I	Date										Less travel advances	
46														
47													Due Employee	
48	Approve equalizer	Emp I	Date										Due Company	
49														
50														
51														
52														
53														
54														
55	Date	Expense Type	Amount	Vendor	City	Note	Attendees							
56														
57														
58														
59														
60														
61														
62														
63														
64														
65														
66														

Sample3

Sample 4—

Sample4.xlt

WEEKLY EXPENSE

No. **101900**

1																				
2																				
3	EMPLOYEE NAME	EMP. NO.	PHONE	PROJECT	DEPT.	WEEK ENDING						REIMBURSE FILL IN TRAVEL AUTHORIZATION NO. WHENEVER AIR TRAVEL TICKETS OR A CASH TRAVEL ADVANCE WAS OBTAINED FROM THE COMPANY Travel Authorization Number TA								
4	MAIL CHECK TO:	ADDRESS					HOLD FOR PICK-UP						1. Total Expenses from Part A 2. Direct Charges to Company 3. Reimbursable Expense (1-2) 4. Cash advance or Carmones							
5	PURPOSE OF TRIP															Date(s) Locations BALANCE Company (4-3) DUE Employee (3-4)				
6																AIRLINE TICKET REFUND/CREDIT (Unused tickets attached) US \$0.00 FOREIGN CURRENCY EXCHANGE (put in)				
7																1 United States 1US\$= 1.000 2 France 1US\$= 5.430 3 Germany 1US\$= 1.900 4 Ireland 1US\$= 0.740 5 England 1US\$= 0.486 6 Japan 1US\$= 105.400				
8																SIGNATURES Employee Date Supervisor/Manager Date 2nd Manager (if required) Date Finance Date				
9																DEPT ACCT PROJECT #/V.C AMOUNT TOTAL AMOUNT				
10																				
11																				
12																				
13																				
14																				
15																				
16																				
17																				
18																				
19																				
20																				
21																				
22																				
23																				
24																				
25																				
26																				
27																				
28																				
29																				
30																				
31																				
32																				
33																				
34																				
35																				
36																				
37																				
38																				
39																				
40																				
41																				
42																				
43																				
44																				
45																				
46																				
47																				
48																				
49																				
50																				
51																				
52																				

Sample4

Customizing the templates

If you wish, you can customize the expense report templates. The procedures in this section assume that you are familiar with Microsoft Excel or a similar spreadsheet application. If you are not, consult your company's Information Services department or an experienced user.

About mapping tables

Before creating or modifying a template, it's important to understand how the Kyocera smartphone Desktop Expense application moves data from your Kyocera smartphone into a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet. Each Expense item represents a group of related data. The following data can be associated with an expense item:

- | | | |
|----------------|--------------------|-------------|
| ■ Category | ■ Payment Method | ■ City |
| ■ Date | ■ Payment Currency | ■ Attendees |
| ■ Expense Type | ■ Vendor | ■ Note |
| ■ Amount | | |

When you perform a HotSync operation, the Expense data is stored on your computer in a file named Expense.txt. When you open the Expense application in the Desktop, an Excel macro populates an expense template with your data based on the rules specified in a spreadsheet file named Maptable.xls.

The Maptable.xls file is an editable spreadsheet that functions as a *mapping table*. The mapping table guides the Excel macro in extracting the Expense data; it defines how large the spreadsheet is and provides the data-cell layout.

IMPORTANT: Be sure to read pages 147–152 in their entirety before making any changes to the Maptable.xls file. These pages include detailed information on the layout of the report template. If you are not certain how to make these changes, consult your company's Information Services department or an experienced user.

To customize a sample Expense Report template

1. Make a backup copy of the contents of the Templates folder.
2. Double-click the template you want to modify. It opens in Microsoft Excel.
3. Make any changes you want to the names and information in the sample template. Be aware of the following restrictions:
 - *Do not* insert rows or columns in the sample template. Doing so causes errors. To move cells to a different location or add or delete rows or columns, you must make changes to the Maptable.xls file.
 - You can insert your own company logo without changing the Maptable.xls file. However, if you change the file name, you need to make a corresponding change in the Maptable.xls file.
 - You can rename cells without changing the Maptable.xls file provided that the expense type corresponds to the Kyocera smartphone data. For example, if you change "Snack" to "Munchies," all items entered on the Kyocera smartphone as "Snack" map to the cell(s) labeled "Munchies."

4. Choose Save As from the File menu. Click the Save as type drop-down list and choose Template (*.xlt).
5. Navigate to the Templates folder in the Palm directory.
 - If you *do not* need to change the Maptable.xls file, save the template file with its *original file name* (e.g., Sample2.xlt).
 - If you *do* need to change the Maptable.xls file, give your modified template a unique name. Be sure to use the .xlt file suffix.
6. Click Save to save your modified template.

NOTE: If you need to modify the Maptable.xls file, you must do so before you can use the modified template with your Expense data. See “Programming the mapping table” on page 149. Read all of the sections of this appendix before making changes to the Maptable.xls file.

Determining the layout of the expense report

Labels—There are two kinds of labels you must define for your report: *day/date* and *expense type*. Each kind of label can be either Fixed or Variable. A Fixed label means that the label *always* appears as a header at the beginning of a row or column. If a label is not Fixed, it is variable. Examples of both Fixed and Variable labels appear in the sample expense templates.

Sections—A section is an area of the report that has common row and column formatting. Most expense reports have more than one section.

Because your Expense data maps to row and column areas of your final report, different Sections require different definitions. To create additional Sections with different mapping, you add corresponding lines to the mapping table file named Maptable.xls. (See “Programming the mapping table” on page 149.)

If a section contains cells for prepaid (company paid) expenses, you must create a line in the mapping table for “prepaid.” This counts as an additional section in the mapping table. The only difference between the prepaid section and the non-prepaid section is the row/column numbers for the expense type.

Analyzing your custom expense report

If you already have a custom Excel expense report, you can use it with a modified mapping table. However, before you can create a Maptable.xls file that corresponds to your custom Expense Report, you must first analyze the characteristics of your report.

Before you begin a custom mapping table

1. Print a copy of your custom expense report. Activate the Row and Column Headings option in the Sheet settings of the Page Setup command so you can quickly determine the size of the Section(s), as well as the numbers for the start rows and columns.

2. On the printed copy, identify the data Sections. A Section is an area of data with common row and column formatting. A yellow highlighter marking pen can make it easy to see the Sections. Your custom Expense Report can contain any number of Sections, and the same data can be repeated in any Section.
3. On the printed copy, identify the Labels that apply to each Section. Each Section can have only one kind of Fixed or Variable Label for rows and only one kind of Fixed or Variable Label for columns.
4. Place a copy of your custom Expense Report in the Templates folder in the Palm directory. Change the file name so it has the file extension .xlt (which defines it as a Microsoft Excel Template). Make a note of the exact file name so it can be defined in the mapping table file.

Programming the mapping table

Once you have analyzed the components of your report, you can program the mapping table to fill the report with data from the Kyocera smartphone.

To program a new custom mapping table

1. Open a copy of the Maptable.xls file in Microsoft Excel.
This file is located in the same folder as the Desktop application (usually C:\Palm). *Make a backup copy of this file before you make your modifications.*
2. Scroll to where you find the name of the original template that you chose for your modifications. The template name is in column B of the Maptable.xls file, next to the cell labeled "Template Name." If you did not modify an existing template, move to any table in the Maptable.xls file.

3. Select all the *rows* associated with the template name. To select the rows, click and drag on the row numbers (left side), so they appear highlighted.

	1	2	3	4	5
5	Template Name:	SAMPLE1.XLT			
6		ROW			
7		Fixed Label		Variable Label by	
8		Day/Date	Expense Type	Day/Date	Expense Type
9	Section1			X	
10					
11					
12					
13	Template Name:	SAMPLE2.XLT			
14		ROW			
15		Fixed Label		Variable Label by	
16		Day/Date	Expense Type	Day/Date	Expense Type
17	Main		X		
18	Business&Entertainment			X	
19					
20					
21					
22	Template Name:	SAMPLE3.XLT			
23		ROW			
24		Fixed Label		Variable Label by	
25		Day/Date	Expense Type	Day/Date	Expense Type
26	Main (PREPAID)		X		
27	Main		X		

All rows associated with the template are selected.

4. Choose Copy from the Edit menu.
5. Scroll down to a blank area of the Maptable.xls file (below the rows used for Sample4.xlt), and click on a row number to select a blank row.
6. Choose Paste from the Edit menu. A copy of the rows you selected in step 3 is pasted into the Maptable.xls file.
7. Name the table. In the cell to the right of the cell labeled Template Name, enter the *exact* file name of your custom Expense Report template.
8. Define the number of Sections.

Each row in a table defines how the Kyocera smartphone data will be placed in a Section of your custom Expense Report. Note that the prepaid portion of a section has its own row and counts as a separate section for map table purposes, *even though it is not a separate section in your template.*

22	Template Name:	SAMPLE3.XLT	
23		ROW	
24		Fixed Label	
25		Day/Date	Expense Type
26	Main (PREPAID)		X
27	Main		X
28	Business Meals & Entertainment		
29	Mileage Log		

Table with four sections

Add or delete rows as necessary so the total number of rows corresponds to the number of Sections in your custom Expense Report. To clear all of the existing

settings in a row, click to select the row and press Ctrl+Delete. Name each row to correspond to a Section of your custom Expense Report.

9. In the yellow section of the table, determine the Label settings.

SAMPLE1.XLT									
		ROW				COLUMN			
Fixed Label		Variable Label by		Fixed Label		Variable Label by			
Day/Date	Expense Type	Day/Date	Expense Type	Day/Date	Expense Type	Day/Date	Expense Type		
		x						x	

- Determine whether the **Rows** will contain expense or date information and place an x in the appropriate cell. This setting also defines whether the label is Fixed or Variable. You can place only one x in the Row section (columns 2–5).
- Determine whether the **Columns** will contain expense or date information and place an x in the appropriate cell. This setting also defines whether the label is Fixed or Variable. You can place only one x in the Column section (columns 6–9).

10. In the green columns (10–13), define the dimensions of the Section.

# of Rows	# of Columns	Start Row	Start Column
36		12	1

# of Rows	The total number of rows in the Section, excluding any header or total rows (only the rows where data will be placed).
# of Columns	The total number of columns in the Section, excluding header or total columns (only the columns where data will be placed).
Start Row	The number of the first row of the Section that will be filled with the Kyocera smartphone data.
Start Column	The number of the first column of the Section that will be filled with the Kyocera smartphone data.

11. In the light blue columns (14–17), define the Dates and Intervals.

Date	Intervals		
	Between		
Date	Dates	Start day	Day
1	0		

- In the **Date** cell, enter the row or column number where date information will be placed.
- In the **Dates** cell, enter the number of blank columns (or rows) separating the date fields. If there are no blank columns (or rows) between date entries, leave this number set to zero.
- In the **Start Day** cell, enter a three-character abbreviation for the day that starts the expense reporting period (for example, Sun or Mon).
- In the **Day** cell, enter the row or column number where all the day information will be placed. If the dates are in a row, enter the row number. If the dates are in a column, enter the column number.

12. In the light purple columns (18–19), enter **yes** if the Section is in list format and **no** if it is not.

Listing Format	Expense Type
YES	8

For sections in list format: In the Expense Type cell, enter the number of the row or column where the expense description will be placed. Expense amounts can be entered in several different columns or rows. *Expense type labels* must all appear in the same column.

13. In the aqua columns (20–48), enter the row or column numbers for the expense types that appear in the Section.

Expense Types					
Airfare	Breakfast	Bus	Business Meals	Car Rental	Dinner
4	4	4	4	4	4

Note that the same row or column number can be used more than once. For example, meals might encompass breakfast, lunch, dinner, and snacks.

14. Complete the table. All of the remaining columns (49–57) are used to define the column or row number that corresponds to the description.
15. Mark a Section for prepaid expenses (yellow column). If a row in the map table is for prepaid (company paid) expenses, type **yes** in the cell on that Section's row. Type **no** in all cells that do not pertain to prepaid expenses.
16. Repeat steps 9–15 for each Section in your custom Expense Report.

57
PrePaid
NO
YES
NO

17. In the magenta section, map the Expense Report Options dialog.

The Expense Report Options dialog has five fields where you can fill in data for the header of

Employee Name		Department	
Header1Row	Header1Col	Header2Row	Header2Col
2	5	2	9

your report. Use this section to specify the row and column on your template where this information will be mapped. Fill in only one row. If the item does not appear on your template, leave these cells blank.

Using applications other than Microsoft Excel

You can use applications other than Microsoft Excel (such as Lotus[®] 1-2-3[®] or Corel[®] Quattro[®] Pro) to open and manipulate Expense data on your computer. The data file (named **Expense.txt**) is stored in the Expense folder within the folder containing Kyocera smartphone user data. The data is in tab-delimited format.

Expense file details

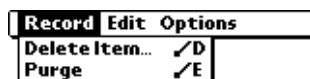
The Expense.txt file contains four groups of data. It will be easier to see these four distinct groups of data if you open the file with a spreadsheet application.

Trips	Shows the number of Expense application categories and lists each one followed by an “end” statement.
Currency	Shows how many currencies were used for the Expense data and lists the countries that correspond to that currency.
Trip	Shows the number of expenses by category and lists the expenses for each category.
Expenses	Shows the total number of expenses and lists them chronologically.

Using the Expense menus

This section explains the menu commands in the Expense application. See “Using menus” on page 59 for information about menu commands that are common to all applications.

Record Menu

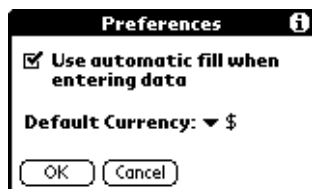


Delete Item	Delete an expense item. You must tap the item you want to delete before Delete Item appears in the menu. The item is removed from the phone, but a copy is transferred to an archive file on your computer during your next HotSync operation. To remove the item completely, uncheck the Save archive copy on PC check box.
Purge	Conserve memory by deleting expense categories you no longer use. An alert dialog prompts you to confirm that you want to purge all records from the selected category.

Options Menu



Preferences Set the automatic fill feature and the default currency symbol.



Use automatic fill to select an expense type by writing its first letter in the Graffiti writing area.

Default currency sets the default currency symbol for the Expense application.

Custom Currencies Define additional currency symbols for the Expense application. Use this command only if the symbol you need is not available in the Currency pick list. (See "Setting up a custom currency symbol" on page 138.)

About Expense View version information for the Expense application.

Chapter 9



Memo Pad

The Memo Pad provides a place to quickly jot down information. You can assign categories to these memos, beam them to other devices with infrared ports, and synchronize them to your computer. Once the memos have been synchronized to your computer, you can open them in the Kyocera smartphone Desktop and in many word processors.

In this chapter

- Creating memos page 156
- Reviewing and editing memos page 156
- Deleting a memo page 159
- Using Memo Pad menus page 160

Creating memos

A memo can contain up to 4,000 characters; the number of memos you can store is dependent only on the memory available on your Kyocera smartphone.

To create a memo

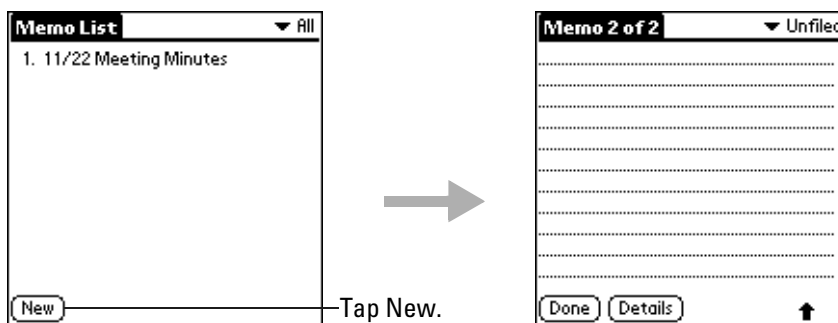
PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the Memo Pad  key.

The Memo List shows the first line of every memo you have created.

2. Tap **New** to create a new memo.



If you just begin writing in the Graffiti writing area while the Memo List screen is open, a new memo is automatically created.

3. Enter the text you want to appear in the memo. The first letter is automatically capitalized. Write  (the carriage return stroke) to move down to new lines in the memo.
4. When you have finished, tap **Done** to return to the Memo List screen.

Reviewing and editing memos

Each time you create a memo, the first line of the memo appears in the Memo list screen. This makes it easy to locate and review your memos.

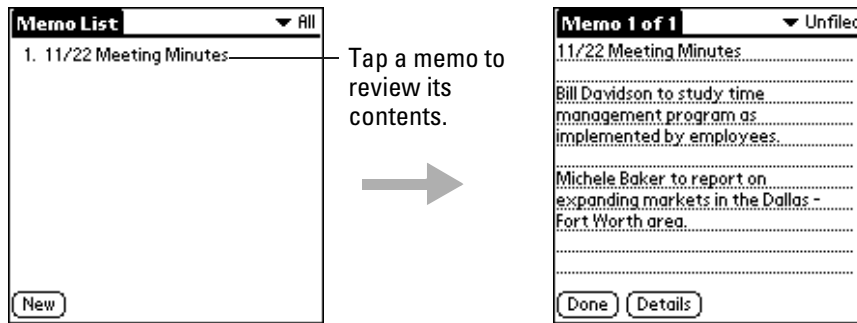
To review the contents of a memo

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the Memo Pad  key.

2. On the Memo list, tap the memo you want to look at.



3. Review or edit the text in the memo.
4. Tap **Done** to save your changes.

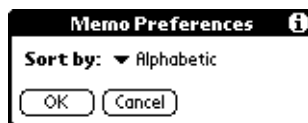
To select a sort option

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

You can sort your memos alphabetically or in any order that you want.

1. Press the Memo Pad  key.
2. Tap  to open the Memo Pad menus.
3. From the Options menu, tap **Preferences**.



4. From the Sort pick list, select **Manual** or **Alphabetic**.
5. Tap **OK** to activate your setting.

To rearrange your memos manually

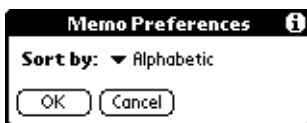
PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

You can manually move the memos around in the Memo list. The sequence you create by moving memos manually is used on the Kyocera smartphone only. It is not transferred to the Kyocera smartphone Desktop. The memos on your Desktop remain in alphabetical order.

1. Press the Memo Pad  key.
2. Tap  to open the Memo Pad menus.

3. From the Options menu, tap **Preferences**.



4. From the Sort pick list, select **Manual**.



5. Locate the memo you want to move. Tap and drag it to a new location in the list. When you lift the stylus from the screen, the memo appears in its new location.

Choosing a memo category

Categories are used to file individual memos into groups for easy review. You can assign and edit categories by using the Categories pick list (in the upper-right corner of the screen) or the Details dialog. See “Using categories” on page 62 for a complete description of categories.

Marking a private memo

You can designate any memo as “private.” When you activate the Security features, the Kyocera smartphone hides all private entries. You must enter a password to display them on the screen.

To mark a memo as private

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap the memo you want to mark as private to display it on the screen.
2. Tap **Details**.



3. Put a check mark in the **Private** check box.
4. Tap **OK**.

Beaming a memo

To beam a memo

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the Memo Pad  key.
2. On the Memo list, open the memo you want to beam.
3. Tap  to open the Memo Pad menus.
4. To beam one memo, tap **Beam Memo** from the Record menu.
5. To beam all the memos in the current category, tap **Beam Category** from the Record menu.

NOTE: Your phone is shipped with the Beam feature disabled to save battery power. To turn it on, see “Setting General preferences” on page 204.

Deleting a memo

There are three ways to delete a memo—simply delete the text of the memo, use the Menu command, or use the Details dialog.

To delete a memo by erasing the text

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the Memo Pad  key.
2. On the Memo list, open the memo you want to delete.
3. Drag the stylus through the text to highlight it.
4. Draw the backspace stroke  to erase the text.

To delete a memo using the menus

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

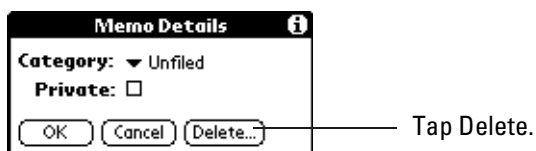
1. Press the Memo Pad  key.
2. Tap anywhere in the memo you want to delete.
3. Tap  to open the Memo Pad menus.
4. From the Record menu, tap **Delete Event**.

To delete a memo using the Details dialog

PHONE May be either on or off

FLIP Open

1. Press the Memo Pad  key.
2. On the Memo list, open the memo you want to delete.
3. Tap **Details**.



4. Tap **Delete**.
5. In the Delete Memo dialog, tap **OK**.

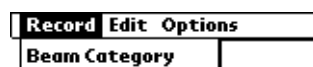
Using Memo Pad menus

The Memo Pad includes menu commands to make it fast and easy to perform common file and editing tasks. See “Using menus” on page 59 for information about menu commands common to all applications.

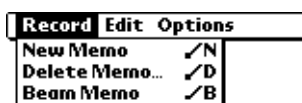
Record menu

The commands on the Record menu vary, depending on which screen is open.

Memo List



Memo screen



- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| New Memo | Create a new memo. |
| Delete Memo | Delete the current memo. In the confirmation dialog, tap OK to delete the memo or tap Cancel to keep the memo.
By default, the memo is removed from the Memo List, but a copy is transferred to an archive file on your computer during your next HotSync operation. To remove the memo completely, uncheck the Save archive copy on PC check box. |
| Beam Memo | Beam the current memo to another device with an infrared port. |
| Beam Category | Beam all memos in the current category to another device with an infrared port. |

Options menu

The commands on the Options menu vary, depending on what screen is open.

Memo List

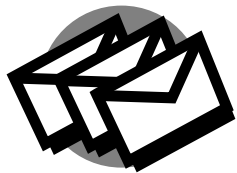


Memo screen



Font	Choose a font (text) style for your memos. See “Choosing fonts” on page 61.
Go to Top of Page	Move to the top (first) line of the memo.
Go to Bottom of Page	Move to the bottom (last) line of the memo.
Phone Lookup	Activate the Phone Lookup feature. See “Using Phone Lookup” in “Installing applications” on page 66.
Preferences	Open the Preferences dialog where you can set up the sort order for your memos.
About Memo Pad	Show version information for the Memo Pad.

Chapter 10



Messages

Using Messages, you can receive voice mail and send and receive SMS (Short Message Service) text messages on your Kyocera smartphone. The Messages application can hold up to 200 incoming messages, in addition to messages you have saved.

In this chapter

- Setting up the Messages application, page 163
- Checking your messages, page 164
- Erasing messages, page 167
- Setting preferences, page 169

Setting up the Messages application

VOICE MAIL NOTE:

Your phone service provider should give you detailed instructions for checking voice messages. Please read those instructions or contact your service provider if you have trouble connecting to your voice mail.

TEXT MESSAGE NOTE:

Text messaging service must be available from your phone service provider for this feature to work. If it is, they will give you more information about sending and receiving text messages. Please read that information or contact your phone service provider if you have trouble using text messaging.

To use Messages, you must first set up a voice mail account with your service provider. Once you have this account, get the appropriate phone number from your service provider and enter it in the Phone Preferences screen.

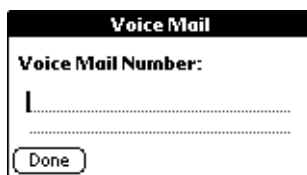
To enter the phone number for your voice mail

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the last Preferences screen you used.
3. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner and select **Phone**.
4. If the phone number of your voice mailbox does not already appear in the Voice Mail field, tap the Voice Mail text box.

The Voice Mail screen appears.



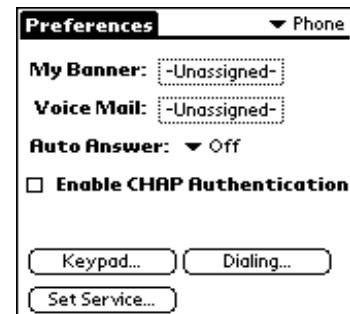
Voice Mail

Voice Mail Number:

.....

.....

Done



Preferences Phone

My Banner: -Unassigned-

Voice Mail: -Unassigned-

Auto Answer: ▼ Off

☐ **Enable CHAP Authentication**

Keypad... Dialing...

Set Service...

5. Write the phone number used to call your voice mailbox. This phone number is assigned by your telephone service provider. If you are not sure what number to enter, contact your service provider.
6. When you have finished, tap **Done**.

Checking your messages

When you receive voice mail or a text message, the LED light on the front of the Kyocera Smartphone flashes red five times, the backlight turns on, and the envelope icon appears on the screen. If you are talking on the phone, a short beep indicates that you have received a message.

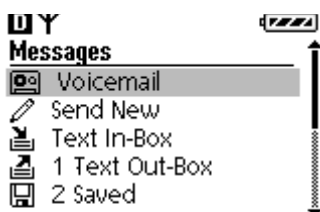
You can check your messages with the flip open or closed. However, to respond to messages or create your own messages, the flip must be open.

To check your messages (with the flip closed)

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

1. Press the Messages  key.



2. Press the shuttle up or down. When the type of message you want to check is highlighted, press the shuttle in.
 - **Voicemail**—Hear your voice mail messages. (For voice mail messages, the Kyocera Smartphone dials the voice mail number you set in the Phone Preferences panel. See *Setting Phone preferences*, page 206.)
 - **Send New**—Compose a new message to Send.
 - **Text In-Box**—View text messages you have received.
 - **Text Out-Box**—View text message you have sent.
 - **Saved**—View text messages you have saved.
3. Press the shuttle up or down to scroll through the messages. Press the shuttle in to see more detail about a message.
4. To reply to a message, press  when the message is bold.
If the message includes a phone number, the Kyocera Smartphone connects to that number.
5. To quit the Messages application, press .

To check your messages (with the flip open)

PHONE On

FLIP Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap the Messages icon .



The icons show you what kind of message you have received. You can tap the icons to respond to the alert messages.

The Message List shows you what kinds of messages you have (voice mail or pages, for example) and how many of each type you have received. The first entry in the Message List is always Voice Mail.

You can view your existing messages with the phone turned on or off, but to respond to them, the phone must be turned on.

To read a message

1. The first part of any text message appears on the Message List screen. To see the complete message, just tap the text.
2. If the message contains a URL (Web address), tap either the URL text or the icon to open the Web site.

NOTE: Your Kyocera Smartphone recognizes many different types of URLs, including Tel: (a URL format for phone numbers) and MailTo: (a URL format for e-mail addresses). It will attempt to follow these links and open other applications as identified in the URL.

To copy or save text

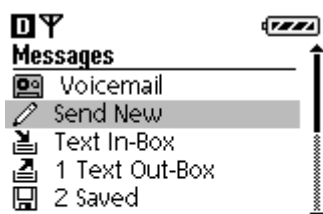
You may sometimes want to copy information from a message and use it in another message or a memo.

1. Tap the message to open it. To copy a portion of the message, highlight the text you want to copy. To copy the entire message, you don't need to highlight it.
2. Tap  to open the Messages menus. From the Message menu, tap any of the following:
 - Tap **Copy** to copy the highlighted portion of the message to the Clipboard. You can then paste it into another application.
 - Tap **Select All** to copy the entire message. You can then paste it into another application.

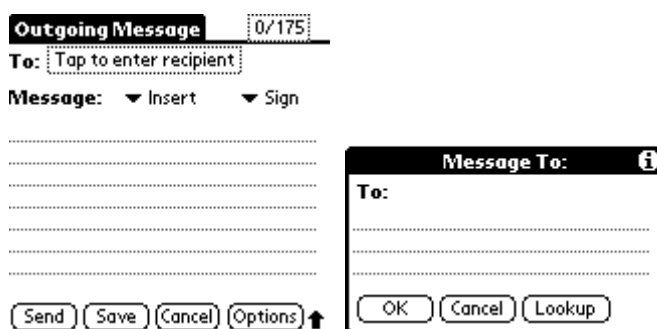
3. Tap **Done**.

Sending messages

With the flip closed, press in the shuttle to view the **Menu** screen. Use the shuttle to select **Messages** and **Send New**. The Kyocera Smartphone will prompt you to **Open the flip to continue**.



The **Outgoing Messages** screen will be displayed. Using your stylus, tap the box to enter the recipient. The **Message To:** screen is displayed. You can enter the recipient several ways.



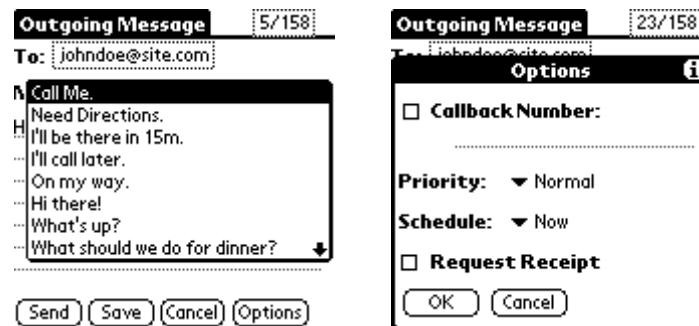
Using the stylus, you can write the phone number or e-mail address. Please see Chapter 3, *Using the Organizer*, for more information on *Entering Information*.

You can also tap **Look Up** on the **Message To:** screen to select an entry from your address book. The **Please Select a Contact** screen will be displayed. Using the stylus, tap on a contact from your list and then tap **Add**. Since your Address book often contains several phone numbers and addresses for one contact, the Kyocera

Smartphone prompts you to select the phone number or e-mail address you want. Tap **Add** and use the stylus to enter your message text. Press **Send**.



You may also select a predefined message from the Kyocera Smartphone's stored messages. Tap **Insert** and select a message from the list. By selecting **Options**, you can customize your message.



Erasing messages

The messages you receive on your Kyocera Smartphone are kept until you erase them. The in-box can hold up to 200 messages. This does not count any messages moved to the Saved folder. Therefore, it is important to erase older messages periodically to free up space. You can erase messages manually or you can use the Auto-Erase feature to remove older messages automatically.

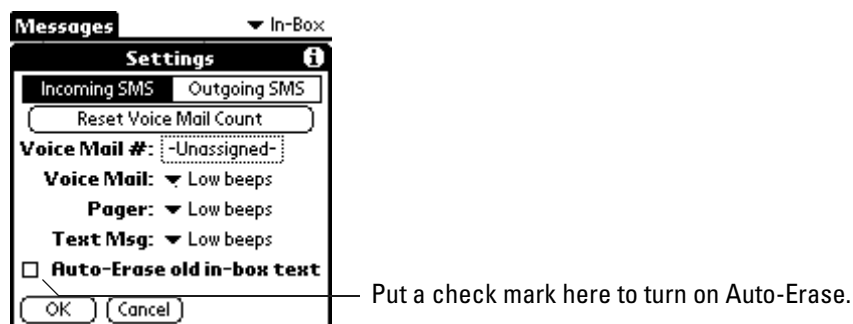
To set up and use Auto-Erase

PHONE ➔ May be either on or off

FLIP ➔ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap the Messages icon .
3. Tap  to open the Messages menus.

4. From the Options menu, tap **Settings**.



5. Put a check mark in the **Auto-Erase old in-box text** check box.
6. Tap **OK**.

When Auto-Erase is enabled—You see a warning when your in-box reaches 150 messages and a second warning at 190 messages. At 200 messages, you see the following message:

You have 200 messages. Your oldest read message will be erased when the next message arrives.

As new messages arrive, the oldest messages are erased.

When Auto-Erase is not enabled—You see a warning when your in-box reaches 150 messages and a second warning at 190 messages. At 200 messages, you see the following message:

You have 200 messages. New messages will be rejected.

To make room for more messages, either move some of your messages to the Filed folder, or turn on Auto-Erase.

To erase messages manually

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.

2. Tap the Messages icon .



3. Do one of the following:

- To erase all of your messages, tap **Erase All**.
- To erase only those messages you have opened and read, tap **Erase Read**.

If you selected **Erase All**



If you selected **Erase Read**



4. In the confirmation dialog box, tap **Erase** to remove the messages.

Setting preferences

You can select the kinds of signals you want to hear when you receive voice mail or other messages.

To set message preferences

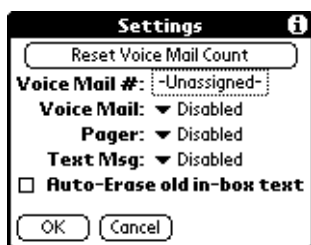
PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

You can set the kinds of alerts you hear when you receive a voice mail message or SMS message and how frequently you are alerted.

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap the Messages icon .
3. Tap  to open the Messages menus.

- From the Options menu, tap **Settings**. The following screen appears.



- Tap the ▼ beside **Voice Mail**. Select the type of alert you want to use for incoming voice mail messages.

Disabled	Do not use any type of sound or vibration alert for incoming voice mail.
Vibrate once	Vibrate when a new voice mail message arrives. Do not repeat.
Vibrate & remind	Vibrate every five minutes until the new voice mail is acknowledged.
Low beep once	Sound a soft beep when a new voice mail message arrives. Do not repeat.
Low beeps	Sound a soft beep once every five minutes until the voice mail is acknowledged.
Loud beep once	Sound a loud beep when a new voice mail message arrives. Do not repeat.
Loud beeps	Sound a loud beep once every five minutes until the voice mail is acknowledged.
- Tap the ▼ beside **Pager**. Select which of the seven alerts you want to use for incoming pages.
- Tap the ▼ beside **Text Msg**. Select which of the seven alerts you want to use for incoming text messages.
- To erase older message automatically, put a check mark in the **Auto-Erase old in-box text** check box. For information about Auto-Erase, see "Erasing messages" on page 167.
- When you have finished, tap **OK** to return to the Messages screen.



Setting Up Network Connections

Your Kyocera smartphone is capable of connecting wirelessly to network services for email, Internet access, or synchronization. To make these connections, your service provider must offer over-the-air digital data coverage in your area. Note that data coverage is not the same as voice coverage, but both may be offered by the same wireless service provider.

In this chapter

- Getting started with network connections, page 172
- Entering network settings, page 173
- Creating and using service templates, page 180
- Using service template menus, page 182
- Troubleshooting network connections, page 183
- Creating a login script, page 184
- Setting a proxy server, page 187
- Using Data/Fax mode with the wireless modem, page 188

Getting started with network connections

Access to the Internet varies depending on your service provider. Before you attempt to use any web application, check with your wireless service provider to see if you have Internet access.

In most cases, if you have purchased data coverage, all of the network settings have already been entered for you by your service provider. If you need to modify any of these settings, follow the procedures in this section.

Some Internet service providers (ISPs) do not allow email to be sent across their SMTP server from outside their network. If this is the case with your ISP, the phone may return mail as undeliverable. Contact your phone service provider for ways to correct this if this occurs.

About network applications

If you have data coverage, you can use the EudoraWeb application for wireless access to Internet sites. This text-only browser makes moving between sites and scrolling through documents a snap. Once the EudoraWeb application is set up, it takes only a few taps to visit an Internet site anywhere in the world.

About network preferences

Network Preferences identify your Internet Service Providers (ISPs) or dial-in (remote access) servers. You can establish any of the following types of connections:

- PPP (Point-to-Point Protocol)
- SLIP (Serial Line Internet Protocol)
- CSLIP (Compressed Serial Line Internet Protocol)

The correct network preferences must be set up before you can use the Eudora or EudoraWeb applications. In most cases, if you have purchased data coverage, all of these settings have already been entered for you.

This chapter contains information for the advanced user; check with your phone service provider and your Internet Service Provider before making any entries or adjustments in these screens.

Collecting information

Before you begin, contact an Internet Service Provider. ISPs provide the services required to use the Internet and send or receive email. **Use the table below to collect information on the network settings.** An asterisk (*) identifies information your ISP provides.

Network Preferences
Service:*
User Name:
Password:
Phone (Internet access phone number):*
Network Preferences Details
Connection type:*
Idle timeout:*
Query DNS ☐
Primary DNS (Domain Name System):*
Secondary DNS (optional):*
IP Address ☐ Automatic

Entering network settings

Use these procedures to enter network preferences only if your service provider has not set them up for you.

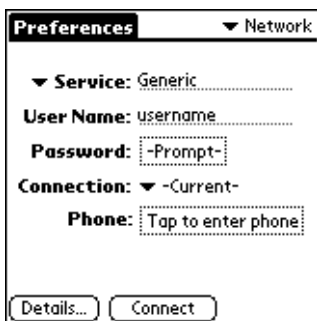
To enter network settings

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Preferences screen.

3. From the pick list in the upper-right corner, tap **Network**.



The screenshot shows a 'Preferences' dialog box with a 'Network' pick list in the top right corner. The dialog contains the following fields: 'Service' (set to 'Generic'), 'User Name' (set to 'username'), 'Password' (set to '-Prompt-'), 'Connection' (set to '-Current-'), and 'Phone' (set to 'Tap to enter phone:'). At the bottom are 'Details...' and 'Connect' buttons.

Selecting a service

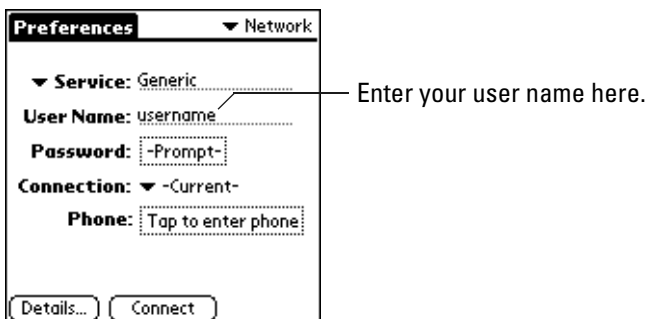
Use the Service line to select your Internet Service Provider or to set up access to a dial-in server.

1. Tap the Service pick list to display a list of service templates. A *service template* is a set of configurations that you can create, save, and reuse.
2. Do one of the following:
 - Tap the service you want to use.
 - Tap **Untitled**. Enter a unique name to create a new service template. For information about service templates, see “Using service template menus” on page 182.

Entering your user name

The user name is the name you use when you log into a server. Although this field can contain multiple lines of text, only two lines appear on the screen.

1. Tap the **User Name** line.
2. Enter your user name. Be aware that most dial-in servers do not accept spaces in the user name.



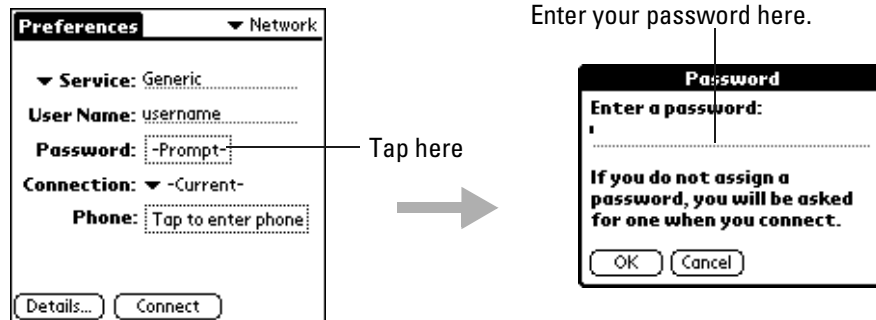
This screenshot is identical to the one above, but includes an annotation. A line points from the text 'Enter your user name here.' to the 'User Name' field, which currently contains the text 'username'.

Entering your password

Use the Password field if you want your phone to enter your password automatically each time you log in to your server or ISP. Check with your ISP to confirm whether or not your password is case-sensitive.

If you do not want your password entered automatically—that is, if you want the security of entering it yourself each time you log in—skip this section and continue to “Entering phone settings” on page 176.

1. Tap the **Password** box.



2. Enter the password you use to log in to your server.

If you *do not* enter a password here, the word “Prompt” remains in the Password box. Each time you log in, you will be prompted to enter your password. If you *do* enter a password here, the word “Assigned” appears in the Password box. You will not be prompted to enter the password.

3. Tap OK.

Selecting the connection

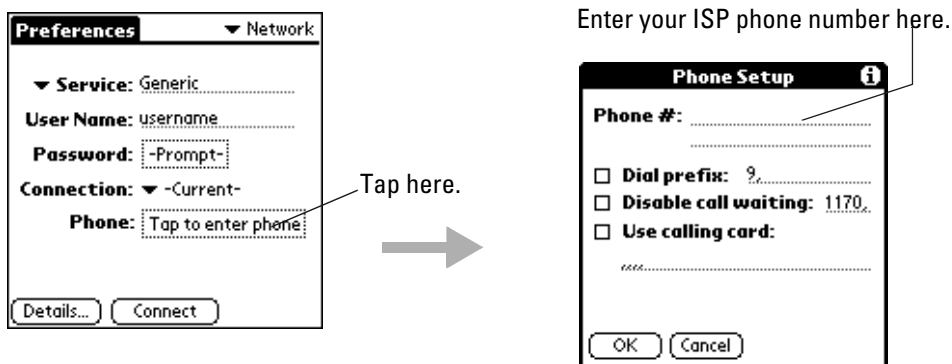
1. Tap the ▼ next to **Connection**.
2. Select from the following methods of connecting to the Internet:

Palm Modem US/Canada	Connect an external Palm modem to the phone (in the United States or Canada).
Palm Modem/UK	Connect an external Palm modem to the phone (in the United Kingdom).
Wireless Modem	Connect using the phone’s internal wireless modem.
Direct Serial	Connect the phone to the serial port of a computer using a data cable.
IR to a PC/Handheld	Communicate with a computer or other handheld device using the infrared port
–Current–	

Entering phone settings

In the Phone Setup dialog, enter the telephone number you use to connect with your ISP or dial-in server. Contact your carrier for the correct number.

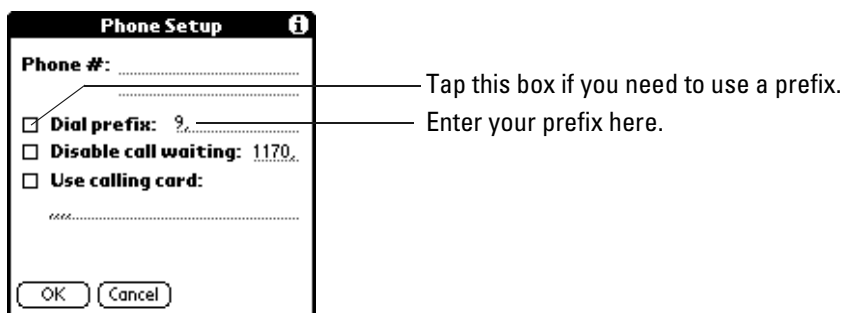
1. Tap the Phone field to open the Phone Setup dialog.



2. Enter the phone number you use to reach your ISP or dial-in server.
3. Do one of the following:
 - If you need to enter a dial prefix, disable call waiting, or use a calling card when you log in, continue to those sections.
 - If not, tap **OK**. Skip to “Selecting a connection type” on page 178.

Entering a dial prefix

A prefix is a number you may need to dial before a telephone number. Ordinarily, you should not need to dial a prefix.

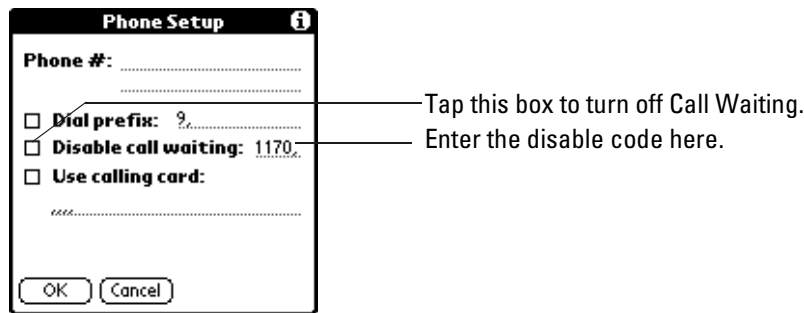


1. Tap the **Dial Prefix** check box.
2. Enter the appropriate prefix.

Disabling call waiting

When using a landline phone, call waiting can cause a network session to end if you receive another call while you are connected. You should not need to disable call waiting when making a wireless data call, because call waiting is handled differently by wireless phone service providers. If for whatever reason you need to disable this feature on your Kyocera smartphone:

1. Tap the Disable call waiting check box.



2. Tap the **Disable call waiting** line. Enter the disable code. Each telephone company assigns a code to disable Call Waiting. Contact your local telephone company for the code you should use.

Using a calling card (optional)

You can use a calling card for your calls to an ISP or dial-in server. After dialing the ISP, the phone enters your calling card number automatically.

However, when you connect to a server, there is usually a delay before you enter your card number. To produce this delay, you must add commas before the card number. Each comma delays the transmission of the number for two seconds. You'll need to experiment to determine the correct delay.

1. Tap the **Use calling card** check box.
2. Tap the **Use calling card** line. Enter your calling card number.
3. Tap **OK** to confirm your selection.

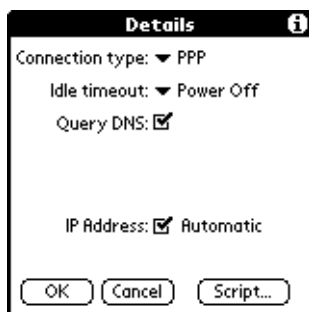
Adding details to preferences

If you are using a predefined service template, you will probably only need to enter your user name and telephone number. If you are creating a new service template, you will need to provide additional information.

Selecting a connection type

There are different protocols for connecting to the Internet. Protocols are the rules for managing and transferring data.

1. On the Network Preferences screen, tap **Details**.



2. Tap the Connection type pick list and select one of the following:

- PPP** Point-to-Point Protocol
- SLIP** Serial Line Internet Protocol
- CSLIP** Compressed Serial Line Internet Protocol

Your ISP or System Administrator can provide the correct connection type. If you are not sure, try PPP.

Selecting idle timeout

Idle Timeout sets how long the phone waits before dropping the connection with your ISP or dial-in server after an application closes.

Tap the Idle Timeout pick list and select one of the following:

- Immediate** The phone drops the connection immediately when you switch to another application.
- 1, 2, or 3 minutes** The phone waits one, two, or three minutes for you to open another application before it drops the connection.
- Power Off** The PPP or SLIP connection is maintained until you turn off the phone (or until it times out).

Selecting Query DNS

Your Kyocera smartphone can verify the DNS (Domain Naming System) numbers of a computer before attempting a network connection. If you put a check mark in the Query DNS check box, the Primary and Secondary DNS number lines do not appear on the screen. Uncheck the Query DNS check box to display the Primary and Secondary DNS lines. Be aware that not all service providers support querying DNS.

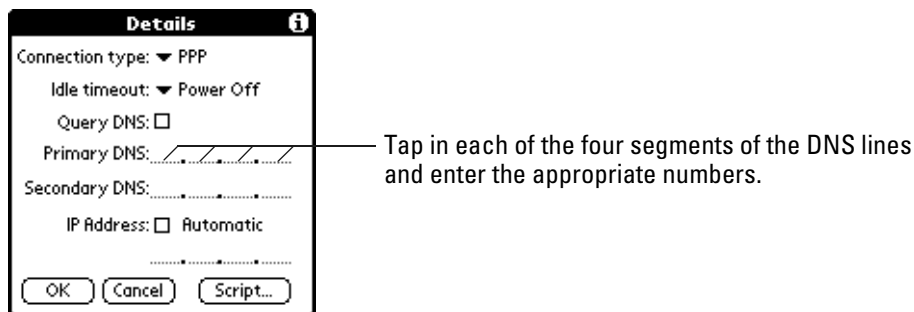
Select the Query DNS check box to turn on this option.

Entering Primary and Secondary DNS

The Domain Name System (DNS) is a mechanism in the Internet for translating the names of host computers into IP addresses. When you enter a DNS number (or IP address), you are identifying a specific server that handles the translation services.

An IP address has four sections, separated by periods. Each section is a number from 0 to 255. In the Details dialog, you enter each section separately. Ask your Internet Service Provider or system administrator for the correct Primary or Secondary DNS IP numbers. Many systems do not require you to enter a DNS. If you are not sure, contact your service provider.

1. Remove the check mark from the Query DNS check box.



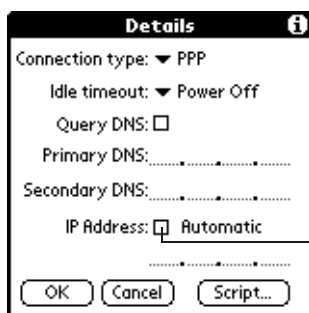
2. Tap the space to the left of the first period on the Primary DNS line. Enter the first section of the IP address.
3. Tap the second section on the Primary DNS line. Enter the second section of the IP address.
4. Tap and enter numbers in the third and fourth sections of the Primary DNS. If a Secondary DNS number is required, enter it on the Secondary DNS line. Only numbers can be entered on these lines.

Selecting an IP address dynamically

Everyone who logs on to the Internet must have a unique identifier (an IP address), whether permanent or temporary. Some networks dynamically assign a temporary IP address when clients log in. Use the IP Address line to identify whether your

network provides automatic (dynamic) temporary IP addressing. If your IP address is permanently assigned, get that information from your system administrator. If you are not sure, select Automatic.

If your network provider supports dynamic IP addressing, make sure that the IP Address check box is checked.



A check mark means that your service provides automatic IP addressing.

Entering a permanent IP address

1. If your network provider does *not* support dynamic IP addressing, remove the check mark in the IP Address check box. The permanent IP address line appears below the check box.
2. Tap the space to the left of the first period, then enter the first section of the IP address you have received from your network provider. Each section must be a number from 0 to 255.
3. Tap and enter the remaining sections of the IP address.
4. When you have finished, tap **OK**.

For more information

Depending on your circumstances, you may need to set up additional configurations to access the Internet. See the following sections for more information:

- If you want to automate logging in with a login script, see “Creating a login script” on page 184.
- If you need to access external computers from inside your company’s firewall, see “Setting a proxy server” on page 187.
- If you want to create a new service template, see the next section, “Creating and using service templates.”

Creating and using service templates

A service template is a set of configurations identifying a network service provider or dial-in server. These configurations include connection type, identification numbers for the host computer, passwords, and other details.

You can create service templates from scratch or by duplicating existing templates and editing information. After you create a new or duplicate template, you can add

and edit the settings. The Network Preferences screen includes menus to make it fast and easy to create and edit service templates.

To add a new service template

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the last Preference screen you used.
3. From the pick list in the upper right corner, select **Network**.



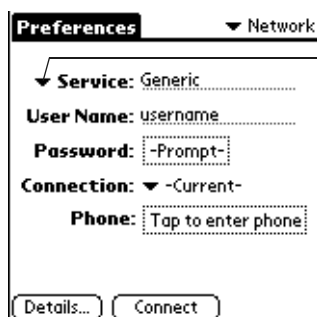
4. Tap  to open the menus.
5. From the Service menu, tap **New**. The word **Untitled** appears on the Service line.
6. Enter the appropriate information for the network service. See “Entering network settings” on page 173 for details about the information in these fields.

To duplicate an existing service template

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the last Preference screen you used.
3. From the pick list in the upper right corner, select **Network**.



Tap here to open the list of all the network service providers on the phone.

4. Tap the ▼ next to Service. All the available services appear in the list.

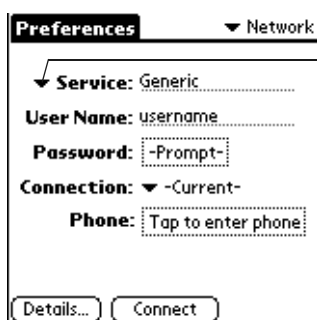
5. Tap the service you want to duplicate.
6. Tap  to open the Network Preferences menus.
7. From the Service menu, select **Duplicate** to create a copy of the template.
8. Edit the copied template as necessary.

To delete a service template

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the last Preference screen you used.
3. From the pick list in the upper right corner, select **Network**.



Tap here to open the list of all the network service providers on the phone.

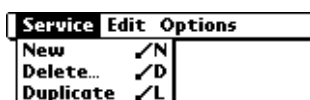
4. Tap the ▼ next to Service. All the available services appear in the list.
5. Tap the service you want to delete.
6. Tap  to open the Network Preferences menus.
7. From the Service menu, select **Delete**.
8. In the Delete Service alert, tap **OK** to delete the template.

Using service template menus

This section explains the menu commands you can use in the Network Preferences screen to work with service templates. For information about the commands in the Edit menu, which are common to most applications, see [Using menus, page 59](#).

Service menu

When you select the Service menu, the following commands appear.



Use these menu commands to do the following

- New** Create a new (empty) service template and add it to the Service pick list.
- Delete** Delete a selected service template from the Service pick list.
- Duplicate** Copy the selected service template and adds it to the Service pick list.

Options menu

When you select the Options menu, the following command appears.



Use this menu command to do the following:

- View Log** Display the Network Log screen

Troubleshooting network connections

If you are having a problem establishing a network connection using TCP/IP, check this section and try the suggestions listed.

Displaying expanded service connection progress messages

It's helpful to identify at what point in the login procedure the connection fails. An easy way to do this is to display the expanded Service Connection Progress messages. These messages describe the current stage of the login procedure. Press the lower half of the Scroll button at any point during login to display these messages.

Viewing the Network Log

If viewing the expanded Service Connection Progress messages does not give you enough information to find out why you cannot connect to your ISP or dial-in server, take a look at the Network Log. The Network Log lists all of the communication that occurs between your modem and your dial-in server during the login procedure. The information in the Network Log can help your ISP or your System Administrator pinpoint where the login procedure communication fails and why.

To view the Network Log

- PHONE** May be either on or off
- FLIP** Open

1. Tap to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap to open the last Preference screen you used.
3. From the pick list in the upper right corner, select **Network**.

4. Tap  to open the menus.
5. From the Options menu, select **View Log**.
6. Tap the up and down arrows of the scroll bar to see the entire Network Log.
7. When you have finished, tap **Done**.

Adding a DNS number

If your ISP or dial-in server requires a DNS number and you did not enter that information in the Network Preferences screen, it will appear that you successfully logged into your network. However, when you try to use an application or look up information, the connection fails. If this occurs, try adding a DNS number. Ask your ISP or your System Administrator for the correct Primary and Secondary DNS IP numbers.

Creating a login script

A login script is a series of commands that automates logging into your ISP. In most cases, you won't need to create a login script; they are not required by most service providers. However, you may need to create a login script in some corporate environments.

If you need a login script, you can create one on your Kyocera smartphone, using the Command pick list in the Login script dialog.

By selecting commands from this list—and entering the correct parameters from your service provider—you can create a script similar to the example on page 184. Notice that you can use non-ASCII and literal characters in your login script. For details, “Using non-ASCII characters in login scripts” on page 186.

Creating a login script is not a simple process. If you have any questions, contact your ISP or system administrator.

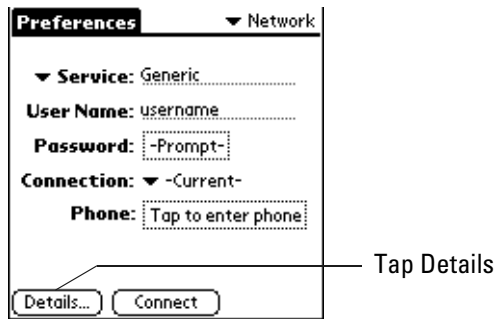
To create a login script

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

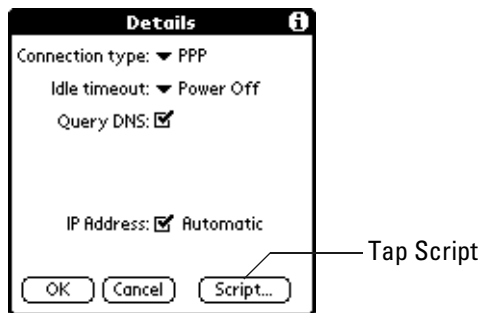
FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the last Preference screen you used.

- From the pick list in the upper right corner, select **Network**.

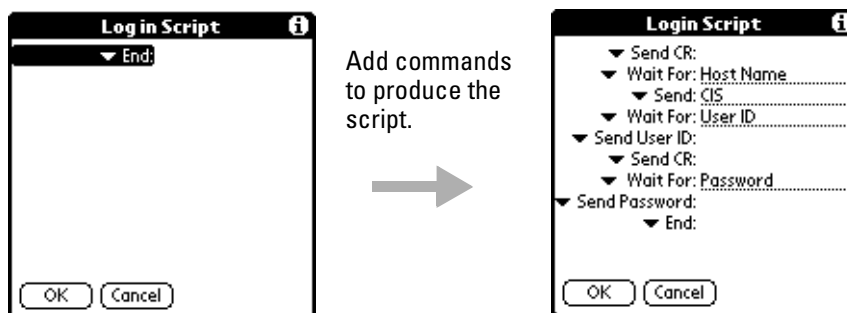


- Tap Details.



- Tap **Script**.

When the Login Script dialog opens, the script is blank. It contains only the word End.



- Tap the ▼ beside End to open the Command list.
- Tap the command you want from the Command list.

If the command requires additional information, a line appears to the right where you can enter the information. The following commands are available:

- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| Wait For | Tells the phone to wait for specific characters from the server before executing the next command. |
| Wait For Prompt | Tells the phone to wait for a command prompt before executing the next command. |
| Send | Transmits specific characters to the server. |
| Send CR | Transmits a carriage return or LF (line feed) to the server. |

Send User ID	Transmits the User ID information entered in the User ID line of the Network Preferences screen.
Send Password	Transmits the Password (from the Password line of the Network Preferences screen). If you did not enter a password there, this command prompts you to enter one. The Password command is usually followed by a Send CR command.
Delay	Tells the phone to wait a specific number of seconds before executing the next command in the login script.
Get IP	Reads an IP address and uses it as the IP address for the phone. This command is used with SLIP connections.
Prompt	Opens a dialog and prompts you to enter text (for example, a password or a security code).
End	Identifies the last line in the login script.

8. Repeat steps 6–7 until the login script is complete.
9. Tap OK.

Using non-ASCII characters in login scripts

You can use the following non-ASCII characters in a login script. This information is provided for advanced users who understand the use and requirements of such characters in a custom login script.

^ char

You may use the caret (^) to transmit ASCII command characters. If you send ^*char*, and the ASCII value of *char* is between @ and _, then the character is automatically translated to a single-byte value between 0 and 31. For example, ^M is converted to a carriage return. If *char* is a value between a and z, then the character sequence is translated to a single-byte value between 1 and 26. If *char* is any other value, then the character sequence is not subject to any special processing.

For example, the string “Joe^M” transmits Joe, followed by a carriage return.

Carriage return and line feed

You may include carriage return and line feed commands as part of the login script, when entered in the following format:

<cr>Sends or receives a carriage return

<lf>Sends or receives a line feed

For example, the string “waitfor Joe<cr><lf>” waits to receive Joe followed by a carriage return and line feed from the remote computer before executing the next command in the script.

Literal characters

The backslash (\) character indicates that the *next character* is transmitted as a character rather than as a processing code.

Examples:—\^Includes a caret as part of the string

\<Includes a < as part of the string

\\Includes a backslash as part of the string

Setting a proxy server

A *proxy server* is used to provide access outside a corporate “firewall.” Most users will *not* need to set up a proxy server. Generally, you only need to add a proxy server if your Network Preferences are set up to dial a modem inside a corporate network. Check with your network administrator to see if you need to complete these fields.

To set a proxy server

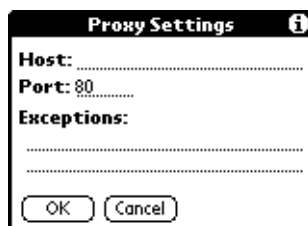
PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open EudoraWeb.
3. Tap  to open the menus.
4. From the Options menu, select **Preferences**.



5. Tap the box next to **Proxy** (by default this shows None).



6. Tap the **Host** line. Enter the proxy server name or Internet address. Obtain the information you enter in the fields from your network administrator.
7. Tap the **Port** line. Enter the configuration parameter for the proxy server.
8. Tap the **Exceptions** line. Enter the domain-name endings for which the browser should not use the proxy.

A domain name identifies the server on the Internet; it is the dot-separated words you see in a URL after the characters *http://*. Typically, the exceptions list includes domain names for servers inside the firewall. You must separate multiple domain names by commas.

Tap **OK** when you have finished.

Using Data/Fax mode with the wireless modem

Your Kyocera smartphone has a built-in 14,400 BPS (bits per second) wireless modem. Using Data/Fax mode, you can put your phone in the sync cradle and use it like a modem for communication between your computer and other computers or networks. For example, you can connect to a remote file server, visit an Internet site, or send and receive FAX transmissions.

If you prefer, you can connect the phone directly to your computer with the data cable, instead of using the cradle.

Phone status in Data/Fax mode

When you put the phone in Data/Fax mode, it enters the following states:

Ready	The message "Ready to Send Data or Faxes" appears on screen. The phone is "expecting" to begin a data call. However, you can still make or receive voice calls.
Modem in use	Once you have initiated a data connection (for example, connected to a web site or begun a fax transmission), the phone cannot receive or make voice calls until the data call is over.
Data until off or Fax until off	If you select Data until off or Fax until off in the Incoming Calls pick list, the phone continues to "expect" only data or fax calls. You cannot receive voice calls until you change this selection.

To set up Data/Fax mode

- PHONE** ➤ On
- FLIP** ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.

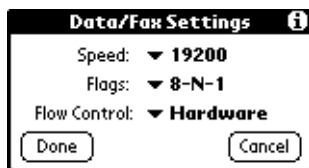
2. Tap  to open Data/Fax mode.



You see status information beginning with “Initializing Modem” and continuing to “Ready to Send Data or Faxes.”

NOTE: If you do not see this screen, you may need to perform a soft reset. See Resetting the phone, page 258.

3. Tap  to open the Data/Fax mode menu.
4. From the Options menu, tap **Settings**.



This screen shows the serial communications settings between your computer and the phone. The default settings are adequate in most situations, but you can change these settings if necessary. Refer to your computer user guide if you need to see what the settings are for your computer.

5. Tap **Speed** and select **19200**.

NOTE: This setting controls the rate of communication between your computer and the modem. It does not affect the speed at which the modem communicates with the outside world, which is set at 14,400 BPS.

6. If you need to change the bit settings to match your computer requirements, tap **Flags** and select one of the following:

8-N-1 8 data bits; no parity; 1 stop bit

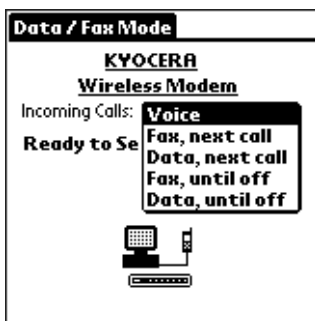
7-P-1 7 data bits; 1 bit parity; 1 stop bit

7-N-2 7 data bits; no parity; 2 stop bits

NOTE: Unless you have an unusual computer system, you will probably not have to change the Flag settings.

7. Do not change the Flow Control setting. Leave **Flow Control** set to Hardware.

8. Tap Done.



9. To preset the phone to receive specific types of data calls, tap the ▼ beside **Incoming Calls** and select one of the following:

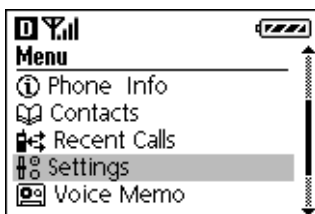
- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| Voice | Expect all incoming calls to be voice calls. |
| Fax, next call | Expect the next incoming call to be a fax transmission. Then return to standard voice mode. |
| Data, next call | Expect the next incoming call to be a data transmission. Then return to standard voice mode. |
| Fax, until off | Expect all incoming calls to be fax transmissions until this setting is changed or the phone power is turned off. |
| Data, until off | Expect all incoming calls to be data transmissions until this setting is changed or the phone power is turned off. |

Incoming data call setup with the flip closed

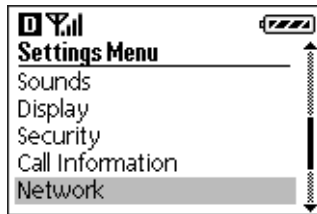
PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

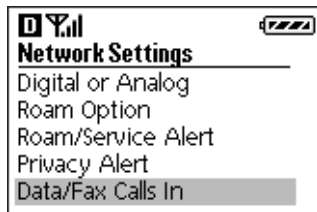
1. Slide the phone into the sync cradle. Do one of the following:
 - If the sync cradle is attached to the port you use for synchronizing data, turn off the HotSync Manager on your computer by clicking  in the Windows system tray. On the menu, choose **Exit**.
 - If you are using a data cable and/or a different port than the one you use for synchronizing data, it is not necessary to turn off the HotSync Manager.
2. At the home screen, press the shuttle in to open the menus.



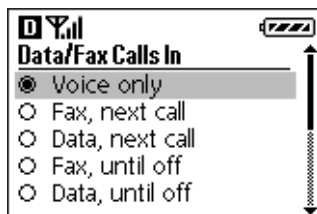
3. Roll the shuttle down until **Settings** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.



4. Roll the shuttle down until **Network** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.



5. Roll the shuttle down until **Data/Fax Calls In** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.



6. Roll the shuttle up or down to select an option for incoming calls:

Voice	Expect all incoming calls to be voice calls.
Fax, next call	Expect the next incoming call to be a fax transmission. Then return to standard voice mode.
Data, next call	Expect the next incoming call to be a data transmission. Then return to standard voice mode.
Fax, until off	Expect all incoming calls to be fax transmissions until this setting is changed or the phone power is turned off.
Data, until off	Expect all incoming calls to be data transmissions until this setting is changed or the phone power is turned off.

7. Press **C** to return to the previous menu. Press **☎/0** to return to the home screen. The banner "DATA ONLY" or "FAX ONLY" appears at the top of the home screen.

Opening Data/Fax mode

You can use Data/Fax mode with the flip open or closed. Notice, however, that you cannot make or receive voice calls or use any other applications while the phone modem is in use. Incoming phone calls will receive a busy signal or go directly to voicemail. Opening any other application terminates the modem call.

You can still receive calls while the phone is idle and the Data/Fax application is on the screen; just not while the modem is in use.

To start Data/Fax mode (with the flip open)

PHONE ➔ On

FLIP ➔ Open

1. Slide the phone into the cradle. If the cradle is attached to the port you use for HotSync operations, turn off HotSync on your computer.

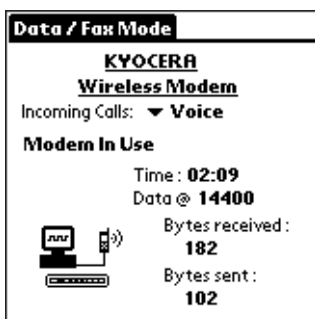
If you are using a data cable and/or a different port than the one you use for HotSync operations, it is not necessary to turn off HotSync.

2. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.

3. Tap  to open Data/Fax mode.

You see status information beginning with “Initializing Modem” and continuing to “Ready to Send Data or Faxes.”

4. From the computer, make the connection you want to initiate.



When Data/Fax mode is running, you see “Modem InUse.” You cannot receive voice calls or open other applications while Data/Fax mode is running.

Exiting Data/Fax mode

To exit Data/Fax mode (with the flip open)

PHONE ➔ On

FLIP ➔ Open

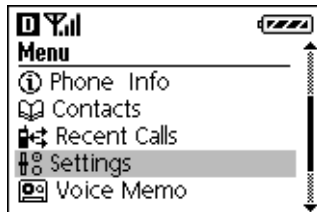
Tap the Applications Launcher and select a different application or close the flip and press the End key. The session terminates automatically.

Resetting the phone to accept voice calls

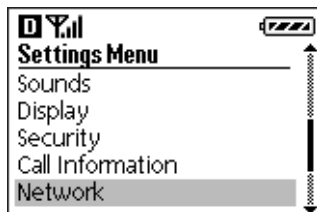
PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

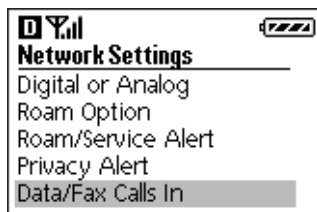
1. At the home screen, press the shuttle in to open the menus.



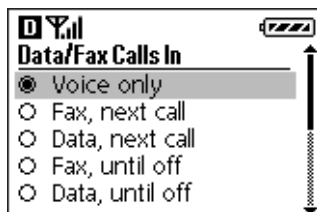
2. Roll the shuttle up or down until **Settings** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.



3. Roll the shuttle down until **Network** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.



4. Roll the shuttle down until **Data/Fax Calls In** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.



5. Press the shuttle up until **Voice only** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.
6. Press **C** to back up one menu level or press **End Call** to return to the home screen.

Troubleshooting Data/Fax mode

- If you see the message "Failed to Initialize Modem," make sure the phone is turned on. Exit Data/Fax mode by tapping the Applications Launcher. Turn on the phone and restart Data/Fax mode.

- You may also see “Failed to Initialize Modem” if you attempt to make a modem connection while you are in a voice call. You cannot make a voice call and a data call simultaneously using the same modem.
- When Data/Fax mode is in the “Modem Ready” state, you can make and receive calls on the phone. Once it is in the “Modem InUse” state, you can no longer make or receive voice calls until you end the modem session.
- You cannot use other applications while running Data/Fax mode. If you open another application, your modem session automatically terminates.



Setting Preferences

In this chapter

Using the Preferences screens, you can customize the configuration of your Kyocera smartphone. Your choices range from selecting ringer sounds to configuring the phone for use on a network.

- About preferences page 196
- Setting Button preferences page 197
- Setting Connection preferences page 199
- Using the Digitizer page 203
- Setting Format preferences page 203
- Setting General preferences page 204
- Setting Network preferences page 206
- Setting Owner preferences page 206
- Setting Phone preferences page 206
- Setting Power preferences page 211
- Setting Registry preferences page 213
- Setting ShortCuts preferences page 213
- Setting Sounds preferences page 215
- Setting Wireless preferences page 218

About preferences

Preferences allow you to adjust many of the features of your Kyocera smartphone. Using the Preferences screens, you can set up all of the following:

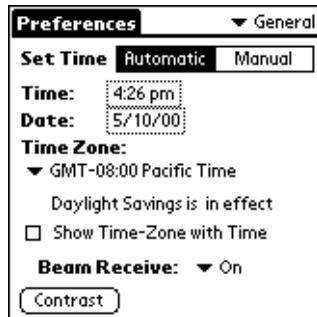
Buttons	Assign different applications to the buttons on your phone. Change the default settings for the full-screen pen stroke.
Connection	Select a connection type (for example, if you connect the phone to an external modem or to a computer's serial port)
Digitizer	Calibrate the screen.
Formats	Select a country; select the appropriate formats for displaying dates, times, and numbers.
General	Set your phone to adjust the date and time automatically. Adjust the date and time manually, if you prefer. Turn the Beam Receive feature on or off.
Network	Configure the Kyocera smartphone for use with a network. Select your network service provider and enter your account information.
Owner	Enter your name, company name, phone number, and other data.
Phone	Customize the service type, time zone settings, on/off power defaults, dialing options, and keypad.
Power	Select power-saving settings.
Registry	Enable or disable applications that are registered for phone signals.
ShortCuts	Set up abbreviations you can use when writing in Graffiti.
Sounds	Select or adjust the sounds of ringers, key beeps, alarms, and other signals.
Wireless	Enter or change the IP address for receiving Web pages from the Palm web clipping service on your phone.

To open the Preferences screens

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to display the last Preferences screen you used.



Tap the ▼ in the upper-right corner to open the pick list.

3. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner and select your choice.

Setting Button preferences

On the Buttons preferences screen, you can change the applications that open when you press a button on the Kyocera smartphone. For example, if you find that you seldom use the To Do List and often use the Expense application, you can assign the To Do List button to start the Expense application.

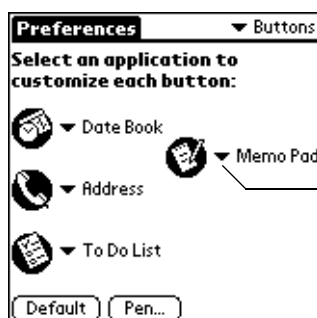
Any changes you make in the Buttons Preferences screen become effective immediately. After you have changed the button preferences, you can still open the original application using the Applications Launcher.

To change the button preferences

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to display the last Preferences screen you used.
3. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner and select **Buttons**.

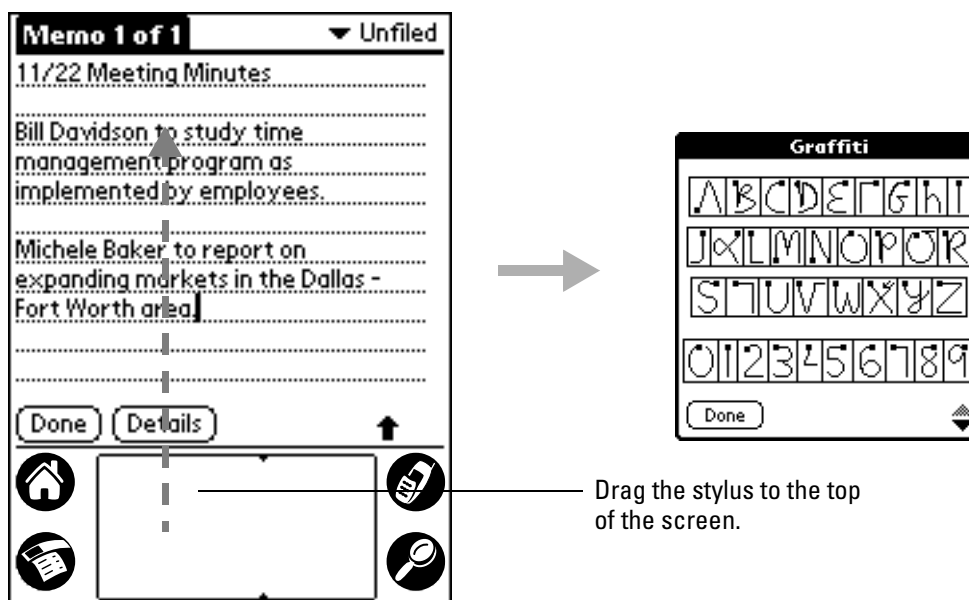


Tap the arrow to open the pick list.

4. Tap the ▼ next to the button you want to change. The pick list shows all the applications on your phone. Tap the application you want to assign to the button.
5. If you later decide to restore the buttons to their factory settings, tap Default.

Pen preferences

On this screen, you can also change what the full-screen pen stroke does. By default, the full-screen pen stroke opens Graffiti Help, but if you prefer, you can set the pen stroke to open the on-screen keyboard, turn on the backlight, lock your phone, or beam data.



To change the Pen preferences

1. Tap **Pen** in the Buttons Preferences screen to open the Pen dialog.



2. Tap the pick list and select one of the following:
 - Backlight** Turn the backlight on and off.
 - Keyboard** Open the on-screen keyboard for entering text characters.
 - Graffiti Help** Open a series of screens that show the complete Graffiti character set.

- Turn Off & Lock** Turn off and lock the phone. To use this feature, you must assign a password. Once the phone is locked, you must enter the password to unlock it.
- Beam Data** Beam the current entry to another device with an infrared port.

3. Tap OK.

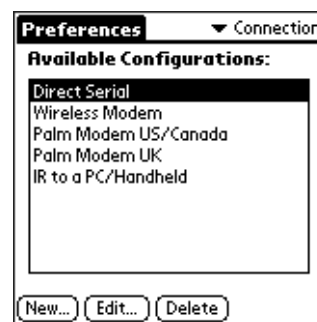
Setting Connection preferences

To open the Configuration preferences screen

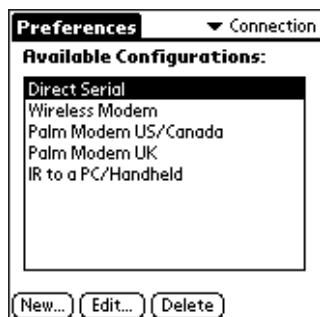
PHONE May be either on or off

FLIP Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to display the last Preferences screen you used.
3. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner and select **Connection**.



To select a configuration



The screen lists all the predefined connections.

The Connection Preferences screen lists all of the predefined connection configurations. If you have created any new configurations, they are also listed here.

To use one of these configurations, just tap it. The highlighted option is the connection that your phone will make.

To add a configuration

PHONE May be either on or off

FLIP Open

INFO HERE ABOUT CONFIGURATIONS

1. Tap **New**.



The 'Edit' dialog box has a title bar with 'Edit' and an information icon. It contains four fields: 'Name' with the text 'Custom', 'Connection' with a dropdown arrow and the text 'Wireless to Modern Method', 'Dialing' with a dropdown arrow and the text 'TouchTone™', and 'Volume' with a dropdown arrow and the text 'Low'. At the bottom are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Details...'.

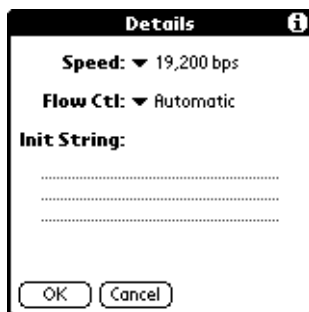
2. In the Name field, enter a name for your new connection.
3. Tap the ▼ beside each field and make your selection from the pick list.

Connection method

Dialing Select TouchTone or Rotary.

Volume Select high, medium, low, or off.

4. Tap **Details**.



The 'Details' dialog box has a title bar with 'Details' and an information icon. It contains three fields: 'Speed' with a dropdown arrow and the text '19,200 bps', 'Flow Ctl' with a dropdown arrow and the text 'Automatic', and 'Init String' with three lines of dotted text. At the bottom are two buttons: 'OK' and 'Cancel'.

5. On the Details screen, enter the appropriate settings to start the connection.

Speed Select the appropriate connection speed. Speeds range from 1,200 bps (bits per second) to 19,200 bps.

Flow Ctl Select Automatic, On, or Off. [NEED INFO]

Init String If the connection requires an initial string, enter it on the lines below Init String. For details, see ??????????

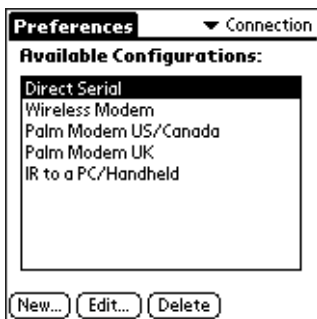
6. When you have finished, tap **OK** twice to return to the Connection Preferences screen.

To edit a configuration

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. On the Connection Preferences screen, tap to highlight the configuration you want to modify.



2. Tap Edit.



The options on the Edit screen vary depending on the type of connection you are modifying.

3. Change the settings as necessary.

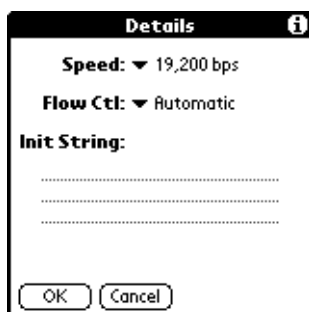
Name

**Connection
method**

Dialing

Volume

4. Tap Details.



5. On the Details screen, edit the settings as necessary.

- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| Speed | Select the appropriate connection speed. Speeds range from 1,200 bps (bits per second) to 19,200 bps. |
| Flow Ctl | Select Automatic, On, or Off. [NEED INFO] |
| Init String | If the connection requires an initial string, enter it on the lines below Init String. [For details, see ??????????] |

6. When you have finished, tap **OK** twice to return to the Connection Preferences screen.

To delete a configuration

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

You can delete any configuration you have created. You cannot delete the default configurations that are entered at the factory.

1. On the Connection Preferences screen, tap the configuration you want to delete.



2. Tap Delete.



3. To remove the configuration, tap **OK**.

Using the Digitizer

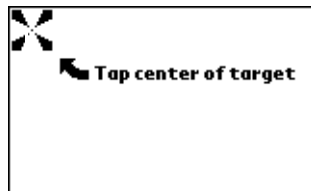
The Digitizer displays targets for you to tap. Using this input, it calibrates your screen.

To calibrate the screen

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. In the Preferences screen, select **Digitizer** from the pick list in the upper-right corner.



2. Tap the exact center of each target that appears on the screen.
If you do not tap the exact center, you are prompted to repeat the process.

Setting Format preferences

Use the Formats Preferences screen to set the format of dates, times, and numbers.

To open the Formats preferences screen

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to display the last Preferences screen you used.
3. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner and select **Formats**.

Preferences		▼ Formats
Preset to: ▼ United States		
Time:	▼ HH:MM am/pm	7:06 pm
Date:	▼ M/D/Y	4/14/98
		Apr 14, 1998
Week starts:	▼ Sunday	
Numbers:	▼ 1,000.00	

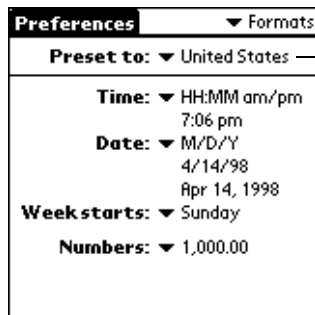
Country default

The country default sets date, time, week start day, and number conventions based on geographic regions. For example, in the United Kingdom, time is often expressed based on a 24-hour clock. In the United States, it is usually based on a 12-hour clock with an AM or PM suffix.

All Kyocera smartphone applications use the Country default settings. You can, however, customize your preferences as described in “Time, date, week start, and numbers formats” below.

To set the country default

Tap the **Preset to** pick list and select the country you want to use.



Select the country here.

Time, date, week start, and numbers formats

The Time setting defines the format for the time of day. The format you select appears in all applications on your Kyocera smartphone.

To select the time, date, week start, and numbers format

1. Tap the Time pick list and select the time format you want to use.
2. Tap the Date pick list and select the date format you want to use.
3. Tap the Week starts pick list and select Sunday or Monday as the first day of the week. This setting controls the Day, Week, and Month views in the Date Book application and all other calendars.
4. Tap the Numbers pick list and select the number format you want to use.

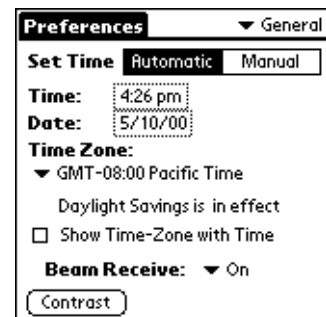
Setting General preferences

Use the General preferences screen to adjust all time-related settings and to turn the Beam Receive feature on or off.

To open the General preferences screen

- PHONE** ➔ May be either on or off
- FLIP** ➔ Open

1. Tap to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap to display the last Preferences screen you used.
3. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner and select **General**.



To set the date and time manually

When it is turned on, your phone reads the date and time over the air and automatically sets them. If you prefer, however, you can turn this automatic feature off and set the time manually.

1. If you want your phone to set the date, time, and time zone automatically, tap **Automatic**.
2. If you want to adjust the date, time, and time zone yourself, tap **Manual** and do the following:
 - a. Tap the **Time** box. Select the correct time, including AM or PM.
 - b. Tap the **Date** box. Select the correct date.
 - c. Tap the ▼ below **Time Zone**. Select the correct time zone.
 - d. If your region is currently using Daylight Savings Time, put a check mark beside **Daylight Savings is in effect**.
3. If you want the time zone to appear on screen when the time is displayed, put a check mark beside **Show Time-Zone with Time**. If you don't want the time zone to appear, tap the check box again to remove the check mark.

To turn Beam Receive on or off

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

When the Beam Receive feature is turned on, your phone can receive information that has been “beamed” from other devices with infrared ports, including other Kyocera smartphones, Palm devices, and laptops.

1. Open the General Preferences screen.
2. Tap **On** in the Beam Receive line.
3. To turn the beaming feature off, tap **Off** in the Beam Receive line.
4. Tap **Done**.

To adjust the contrast

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. To adjust the contrast of the screen, open the General Preferences screen.
2. Tap **Contrast**.
3. Drag the slider bar left to make the screen lighter or right to make it darker.
4. When you have finished, tap **Done**.

Setting Network preferences

Use the Network preferences screen to set up Internet connections on your Kyocera smartphone. See “Entering network settings” on page 158.

Setting Owner preferences

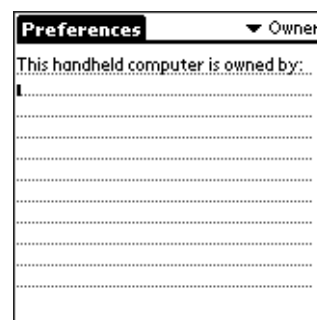
Use the Owner preferences screen to enter your name and any other information you want to include.

To enter the Owner preferences

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to display the last Preferences screen you used.
3. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner and select **Owner**.
4. Enter a name or other information you want to use to identify the owner of the phone.



Setting Phone preferences

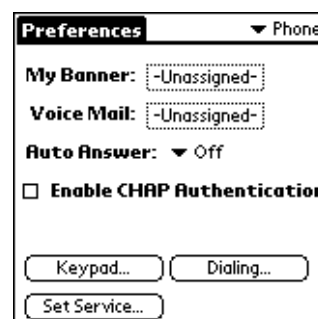
Use the Phone preferences screens to customize your phone.

To open the Phone preferences screen

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

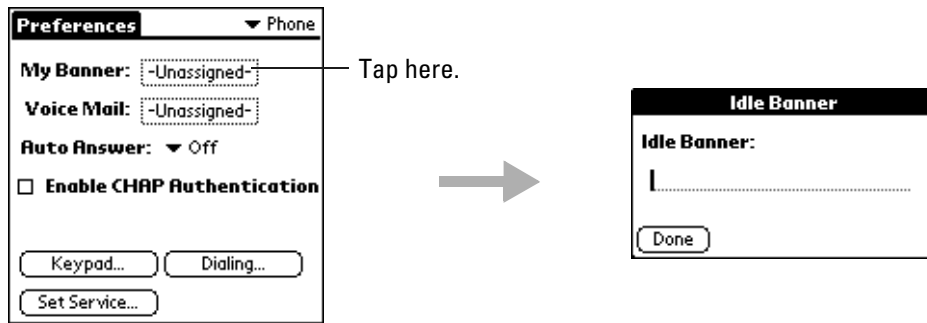
1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to display the last Preferences screen you used.
3. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner and select **Phone**.



To enter text in the banner

The banner is a name or other text that appears on the screen when the phone is idle and the flip is closed.

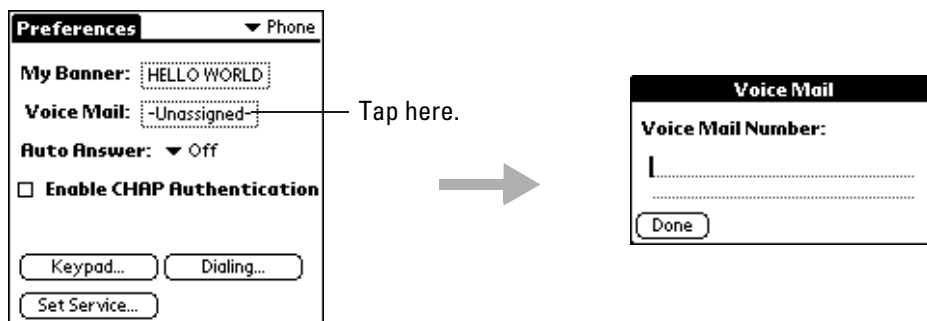
1. On the Phone Preferences screen, tap the **My Banner** field.



2. Tap once on the line. Then write the text you want to appear in the banner.
3. Tap **Done**.

To enter the phone number for your voice mailbox

1. If the phone number of your voice mailbox does not already appear on the Phone Preferences screen, tap the **Voice Mail** field.



2. Write the phone number used to call your voice mailbox. This phone number is assigned by your telephone service provider. If you are not sure what number to enter, contact your service provider.
3. Tap **Done**.

To set Auto Answer

On the Phone Preferences screen, tap the ▼ beside **Auto Answer** and select one of the following:

- Off** Do not answer incoming calls automatically.
- On** Answer all incoming calls after approximately five seconds.
- HFk only** Answer incoming calls after approximately five seconds only if the phone is in a hands-free car kit.

NOTE: If you use your phone in a hands-free car kit, you can select from two answering styles.

- **Auto Answer (HFk only)**—When the phone is in a hands-free car kit, all calls are answered automatically.

- **Voice Answer**—After one ring, a voice prompt asks you whether you want to answer the phone or not. If you answer “Yes,” the call is answered. If you answer “No,” the call is sent to your voice mail. To use this method, see “Answering calls “hands-free”” on page 29.

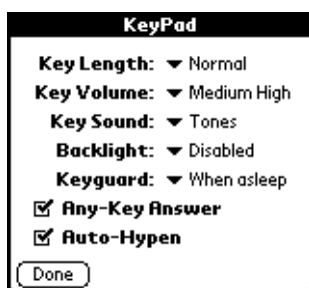
To enable CHAP Authentication

Some wireless service providers require CHAP authentication for data coverage; others do not. Check with your wireless service provider to determine whether you need to change this parameter. You can turn CHAP authentication on or off on the Phone Preferences screen.

1. To turn on CHAP authentication, put a check mark beside **Enable CHAP Authentication** on the Phone Preferences screen.
2. To turn off CHAP authentication, remove the check mark.
If you are not sure, leave CHAP enabled.

Setting keypad preferences

1. From the Phone Preferences screen, tap **Keypad**.



2. To adjust the over-the-air tones the phone makes while you are dialing, tap the ▼ beside **Key Length**. Select **Normal** or **Long**.
In most cases, you won't need to adjust this setting. For some applications (for example, modems), you may need to set the tone to Long.
3. To adjust the volume of the beep you hear when you press a key on the keypad, tap the ▼ beside **Key Volume**. Select **Off**, **Low**, **Medium Low**, **Medium High**, or **High**.
4. To adjust the type of sound you hear when you press a key on the keypad, tap the ▼ beside **Key Sound**. Select **Tones** or **Clicks**.
5. To adjust the amount of time the backlight remains lighted, tap the ▼ beside **Backlight**. Select one of the following:

Disabled The backlight does not come on automatically when you press a key.

10 seconds The backlight comes on whenever you press any key and remains on for 10 seconds after the last key press.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| 30 seconds | The backlight comes on whenever you press any key and remains on for 30 seconds after the last key press. |
| 10 sec. & in call | The backlight comes on whenever you press any key and remains on for 10 seconds after the last key press. The backlight remains on during all calls. |
| 30 sec. & in call | The backlight comes on whenever you press any key and remains on for 30 seconds after the last key press. The backlight remains on during all calls. |
6. For information on **Keyguard** options, see “Using Keyguard” in chapter 13.
 7. If you want to answer calls by pressing any key on the keypad, put a check mark beside **Any-Key Answer**. If you don’t want to use this feature, remove the check mark.
 8. To insert hyphens automatically in phone numbers, put a check mark beside **Auto-Hyphen**. If you don’t want to use this feature, remove the check mark.
 9. Tap **Done**.

Setting dialing preferences

Use these settings if you want your phone to automatically add numbers before or after your local or long-distance phone numbers (for example, a code number for long-distance access). Any numbers you enter in this screen have precedence over all other phone settings except the automatic Area Code setting. You can add up to 32 characters before and after the phone number, although only 12 are visible on the screen.

1. From the Phone Preferences screen, tap **Dialing**.

2. If you want the phone to add area codes to phone numbers when you travel, tap the ▼ beside **Auto Area Code**. The area codes are taken from your Address Book, if available. Otherwise, when you are in Roaming mode, the phone insets your home service area code.

Never The phone never inserts area codes.

- | | |
|----------------|--|
| Roaming | The phone inserts the area code for any number you dial while in Roaming mode. It does not insert area codes when you are in your Home area. |
| Always | The phone inserts the area code for any number you dial whether you are in your Home area or roaming. |
3. To add 1 in front of all long-distance phone numbers automatically, put a check mark in the **Add '1' for long-distance** check box. If you don't want to use this feature, remove the check mark.
 4. If you want to add prefixes or suffixes to all your *local calls*, do the following:
 - a. Make sure that Local Calls appears on the third line of the screen.
 - b. Enter the numbers to dial before the phone number on the **Dial ____ before number** line.
 - c. Enter the numbers to dial after the phone number on the **Dial ____ after number** line.
 5. If you want to add prefixes or suffixes (such as calling card numbers) to all your *long distance calls*, do the following:
 - a. Tap the ▼ beside Local Calls and select **Long Distance**.
 - b. Enter the numbers to dial before the phone number on the **Dial ____ before number** line.
 - c. Enter the numbers to dial after the phone number on the **Dial ____ after number** line.
 6. Enter the length of local phone numbers in your area (excluding the area code) in the **Local Number is __ digits long** line. Enter the length of the area code in the **Area Code is __ digits long** line.

Because the length of phone numbers varies around the world, this information is used to format your numbers correctly.
 7. To enable one-touch dialing, put a check mark in the **One-touch Dialing** check box.

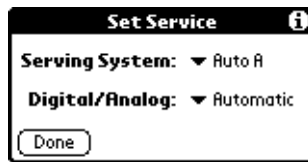
When one-touch dialing is turned on, you can call the numbers in your Speed Dial list simply by entering the Speed Dial number (1–199) and holding down the last digit for a few seconds.
 8. Tap **Done**.

Setting service preferences

If you have multiple home service providers, you can select how you want your phone to handle them on this screen. You can also set your phone to permit or restrict roaming. If you do not have multiple home service providers, you will not need to make any changes to this screen.

CAUTION: Use caution when making changes to service settings. Do not make adjustments to your phone account unless you have more than one home service provider. Check with your service provider(s) to verify what changes, if any, should be made.

1. From the Phone Preferences screen, tap **Set Service**.



2. To identify the preferred service for your phone, tap the ▼ beside **Serving System**. Your service provider can tell you whether it is necessary to make changes to this setting, as well as what channel to select.

Auto A Use the Channel A service provider. If it is not available, switch to the Channel B service provider.

Auto B Use the Channel B service provider. If it is not available, switch to the Channel A service provider.

No Roaming Use the home service provider only.

3. If you wish to set the phone into a particular mode, tap the ▼ beside **Digital/Analog**. Select one of the following:

Automatic The phone switches automatically from digital to analog mode if necessary.

Analog Only The phone accepts analog calls only.

Analog Call The phone expects the next call to be analog.

Digital Only The phone accepts digital calls only.

4. When you have finished, tap **Done**.

Setting Power preferences

Use the Power settings to turn your phone on or off under various conditions. Adjusting these settings can extend the life of the battery.

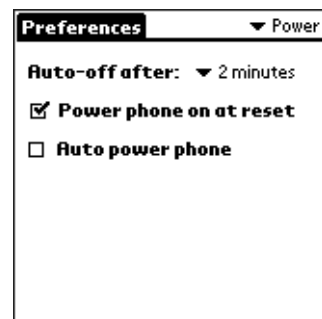
When your phone arrives from the factory, the default power settings are **Auto-off after two minutes** and **Power Phone On at Reset**. You can adjust these settings at any time.

To set power preferences

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to display the last Preferences screen you used.
3. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner and select **Power**.



4. To set how long the phone screen remains on when it is not in use, tap the ▼ beside **Auto-off after** and select one of the following:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Never | The screen remains on as long as the keypad is flipped open, whether you are using any applications or not. |
| 1, 2, 3, 5, or 15 minutes | The screen goes blank or “sleeps” after the specified number of minutes of nonuse. It “wakes up” automatically when you press an application button. You can adjust these settings at any time. If you find that the screen is going blank too frequently, select a longer time period. |

NOTE: The auto-off setting controls how long the screen remains “awake,” not how long the phone remains on.

5. If you want the phone to turn on automatically when you reset it, put a check mark in the **Power phone on at reset** check box. (This is the default setting.) If you want to leave the phone turned off until you turn it on yourself, remove the check mark from this check box.
6. If you want the phone to turn on or off at specific times, put a check mark in the **Auto power phone** check box. Then tap the **Time on** and **Time off** fields. Enter the times when you want the phone to turn on and off. Notice that these times refer to the current day (the next 24 hours).
7. When you have finished, tap **Done**.

Setting Registry preferences

The Registry preference screen identifies which applications handle specific types of URLs. If you install third-party applications on your phone, use this screen to register them.

To open the Registry preferences screen

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to display the last Preferences screen you used.
3. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner and select **Registry**.

Registry			▼ Registry
Scheme	Stat	Handler	
mailto:	OK	Eudora	
mail-client:	OK	Eudora	
app-findndial:	OK	Call History	
tel:	OK	Dialer	
dial:	OK	Dialer	
http:	OK	Eudora Web	
https:	OK	Eudora Web	
bookmarks:	OK	Eudora Web	
sms:	OK	Messages	
			Disable

To change Registry preferences

The Scheme column shows types of URLs. The Handler column shows the application that handles each type. For example, a URL beginning with *http:* is a Web site and must be handled by a browser, while a URL beginning with *tel:* is a phone number and can be handled by the Dialer.

1. If you don't want your phone to open or respond to a particular type of URL, tap the item. Then tap **Disable**.
The Stat (status) column changes to Disable.
2. To reenable a scheme, tap **Enable**.
3. If you want to delete a scheme from the registry, tap  to open the Phone Preferences menus. From the Special menu, tap **Delete**.
4. To re-register a scheme you have deleted, tap  to open the Phone Preferences menus. From the Special menu, tap **Rebuild**.

NOTE: Deleted schemes are re-registered if you reset the Kyocera smartphone. Disabled schemes, however, remain disabled after a reset.

Setting ShortCuts preferences

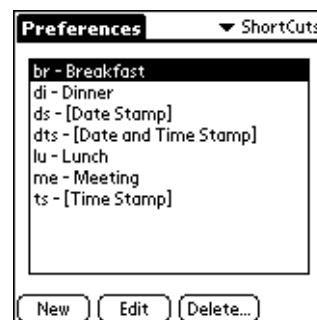
Using the ShortCuts Preferences screen, you can create your own abbreviations for entering text with Graffiti. For more information, see "Graffiti ShortCuts" on page 50.

To open the ShortCuts Preferences screen

PHONE → May be either on or off

FLIP → Open

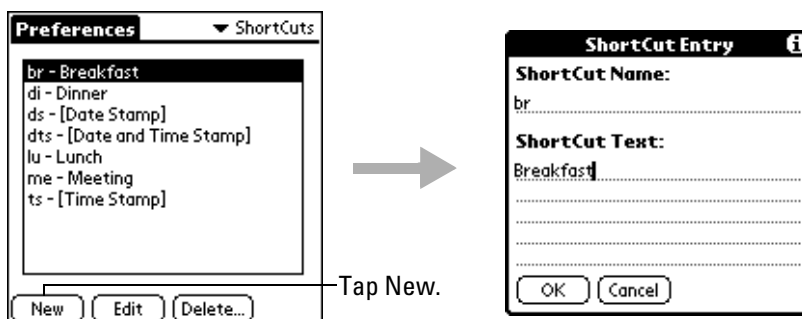
1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to display the last Preferences screen you used.
3. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner and select **ShortCuts**.



To create a ShortCut

You can create a ShortCut for any words, letters, or numbers. All the ShortCuts you create appear on the list in the ShortCut Preferences screen and are backed up on your computer when you perform a HotSync operation. You can use these ShortCuts in any application.

1. Tap New in the ShortCut Preferences screen.



2. On the ShortCut Name line, enter the letters you want to use to activate the ShortCut.
3. Tap the ShortCut Text area and enter the text that you want to appear when you write the ShortCut characters.
4. Tap **OK**.

NOTE: To use a ShortCut, draw the ShortCut stroke followed by the ShortCut characters. The ShortCut symbol appears at the insertion point and indicates you are in ShortCut mode.

To edit a ShortCut

1. Tap the ShortCut you want to edit in the ShortCuts Preferences screen.
2. Tap **Edit** to display the ShortCut Name and ShortCut text.
3. Make the changes you want and tap **OK**.

To delete a ShortCut

1. Tap the ShortCut you want to delete in the ShortCuts Preferences screen.
2. Tap **Delete**.
3. In the alert dialog, tap **Yes** to delete your ShortCut.

Setting Sounds preferences

Use the Sound Preferences to choose the types of signals your phone uses to alert you about your calls and pages. These signals include both sounds and silent alerts.

To open the Sounds preferences screen

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to display the last Preferences screen you used.
3. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner and select **Sounds**.



To set basic sound preferences

On the basic Sounds Preferences screen you can set the phone to ring, vibrate, or flash when you receive a phone call. You can also adjust the volume of system sounds, alarms, and games sounds.

1. To select the signal for an incoming phone call, tap the ▼ beside **Silence Sounds**. From the list, select one of the following:

No, normal	When you receive an incoming call, the phone rings, using the ringer sound you selected on the Incoming Calls screen.
Yes, vibrate only	When you receive an incoming call, the phone vibrates to signal the call. The phone does not ring.
Yes, lights only	When you receive an incoming call, the backlight flashes to signal the call. The phone does not ring.
2. To adjust the volume of system sounds, tap the ▼ beside **System Sound**. Select High, Medium, Low, or Off. This setting controls the volume of the phone ringer and other beeps and clicks when you tap items on the screen or press keys.
3. To adjust the volume of alarms, tap the ▼ beside **Alarm Sound**. Select High, Medium, Low, or Off. This setting controls the sound of alerts you set, for example, to remind you of a meeting.

4. To adjust the volume of game sounds, tap the ▼ beside **Game Sound**. Select High, Medium, Low, or Off. This setting controls the sound effects in built-in games and any third-party games you have downloaded to your Kyocera smartphone.
5. If you want your phone to adjust the volume of the earpiece automatically, put a check mark in the **Enable Smart Sound** check box. If you don't want to turn on this automatic feature, remove the check mark from this check box.
When you turn on the Auto Volume feature, the volume level in the phone earpiece is adjusted up or down based on ambient noise levels and the volume of the speaker's voice.
6. Tap the **Play alerts through speaker when headset is plugged in** check box to route alert sounds through the speaker.
7. To make further adjustments to the sounds, tap **Incoming Calls** (see page 216) or **Status** (see page 217).
8. If you have finished setting the sounds, tap **Done** to return to the Applications Launcher.

To set the ringer on incoming calls

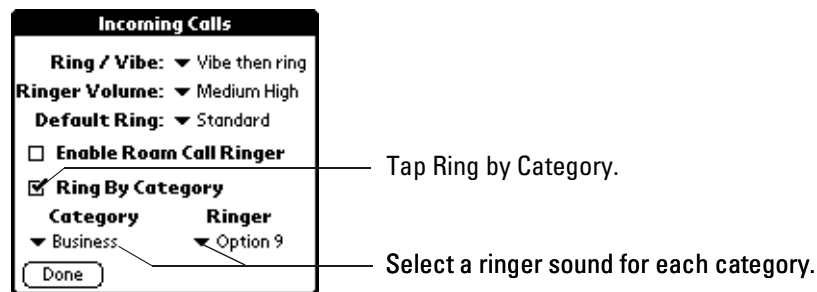
You can choose from a variety of ringer sounds for incoming phone calls. If you prefer, you can assign different sounds to different categories of calls. For example, you can distinguish between your business calls and your personal calls by selecting a different sound for each. To create additional categories, see "Using categories" on page 54.

1. On the Sounds Preferences screen, tap **Incoming Calls**.



2. To choose how the phone signals an incoming call, tap the ▼ beside **Ring/Vibe** and select one of the following options:
 - **Ring only**—The phone rings and does not vibrate.
 - **Vibrate only**—The phone vibrates and does not ring.
 - **Vibe then ring**—The phone vibrates for a few seconds, then rings.
3. To adjust the ringer volume, tap the ▼ beside **Ringer Volume**. Select a volume level between Low and High. If you want the ringer volume to increase with each ring, select **Escalate**.

4. Tap the ▼ beside **Default Ring** and select a ringer sound. When you select a sound, you hear a sample of it. The phone uses the default ringer for the following types of calls:
 - **If you do not use the Ring by Category feature:** The default ringer is used for all incoming phone calls.
 - **If you use the Ring by Category feature:** The default ringer is used for all incoming phone calls that do not fall into the specified categories. For example, if you have selected a ringer for your business calls and another ringer for your personal calls (based on phone numbers in your Address Book), the default ringer indicates a call from a number that is not in either of these categories.
5. If you want to hear different ringer sounds for different categories of calls, do the following steps.
 - a. Put a check mark in the **Ring by Category** check box.



- b. Tap the ▼ under **Category**. Select a category of calls.
 - c. Tap the ▼ under **Ringer**. Select the sound for that category of calls.
 - d. Repeat steps b–c for each category you want to set up.
6. When you have finished, tap **Done** to return to the Sounds Preferences screen.

To set status alerts

You can set your phone to alert you for a variety of service situations, such as when you leave your home service area or when you miss a call.

1. On the Sounds Preferences screen, tap **Status**.



You can select any number of these check boxes.

2. To hear a tone for any of these changes in phone service, put a check mark in the appropriate check box.

When I lose or gain service	You hear three beeps when the phone moves in or out of service areas. When the phone cannot locate a service area, you cannot make or receive calls.
While I'm roaming	You hear two beeps when the phone moves in or out of your home service area. When the phone is roaming, you may be billed at a higher rate.
Every minute in conversation	You hear a single beep every minute during a call.
If I miss a call	You hear a single beep every minute while the "Missed calls" message is on the screen.
If I drop a call	This box is checked by default. If a call is dropped, you hear three beeps and an alert message appears on the screen.
If I lose or gain Privacy	You hear a beep when you lose or gain Voice Privacy. Voice Privacy (if available from your service provider) uses a more encrypted transmission.

3. When you have finished, tap **Done** to return to the Sounds Preferences screen.

Setting Wireless preferences

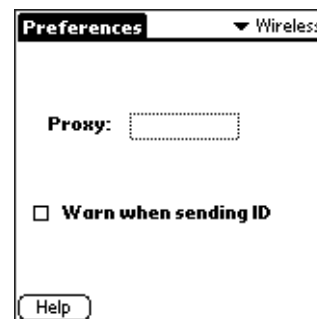
Use the Wireless preferences screen if you want to receive Web pages from the Palm web clipping service on your phone.

To open the Wireless preferences screen

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to display the last Preferences screen you used.
3. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner and select **Wireless**.



To enter or change Wireless preferences

Your service provider may already have entered the IP address for the Palm web clipping service. If not, you can enter it yourself on this screen.

In addition, when you connect to a Web site, the web server requests a unique identifier from your remote device. If you do not want your phone's identifier sent automatically to the web service, you can turn it off on this screen.

1. If your service provider has not already entered the IP address for the Palm web clipping service in the **Proxy** field, tap the Proxy box.
2. In the Edit Proxy dialog, enter the appropriate IP address.
3. To return to the original factory settings, tap **Default**.
4. Tap **OK**.
5. If you do not want your phone's identifier sent automatically to the web site, put a check mark in the **Warn when sending ID** box.

When this box is checked, a warning message appears whenever you perform a transaction that would send your phone's identifier to the server. Select **Continue** to send the ID or **Cancel** to prevent the ID from being sent.



Security

Your Kyocera smartphone comes with a range of security features to prevent unauthorized calls.

- **Keyguard**—Keyguard protects your phone from accidental calls (for example, when the phone is inside a briefcase where it might slide around).
- **Privacy**—You can mark entries in your Address Book as private and control who can see them either with or without a password. If you set a password, you must enter that password to see the private entries. If you do not set a password, private entries are hidden until you set the Security application to show them.
- **Locked mode**—When the phone is locked, you can only make emergency calls from the keypad. You cannot use the PDA.

In this chapter

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------|
| ■ Using Keyguard | page 221 |
| ■ Showing or hiding private entries | page 223 |
| ■ Locking the phone | page 224 |

Using Keyguard

Keyguard protects your phone from accidental key presses (for example, if the phone slips around inside a briefcase).

When the phone power is turned on but you are not actively using the phone, the phone enters power-save or “sleep” mode. In this state, the screen is blank and the keypad is locked. The PDA is turned off to save power. The LED light flashes slowly to show that the phone is on.

Keyguard remains on until you either turn it off or answer a call.

To turn Keyguard on immediately

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

Press the backlight button on the top of the phone.

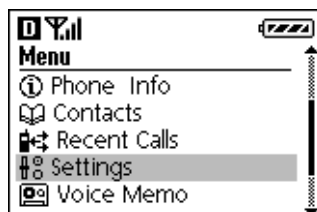
To turn Keyguard on or off automatically

PHONE ➤ On

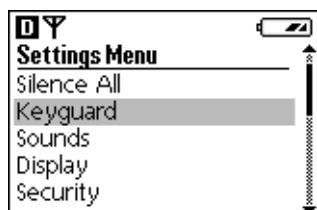
FLIP ➤ Closed

By default, the phone is set to go into power-save mode automatically after two minutes of nonuse. You can turn this automatic feature on or off and adjust how quickly the phone goes into power-save mode.

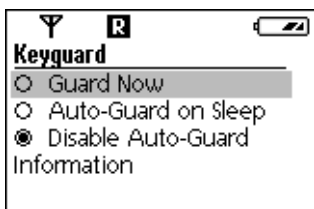
1. From the home screen, press the shuttle in to open the menus.



2. Roll the shuttle down until **Settings** is highlighted, then push the shuttle in to select it.



3. In the Settings menu, roll the shuttle down once until **Keyguard** is highlighted, then push the shuttle in to select it



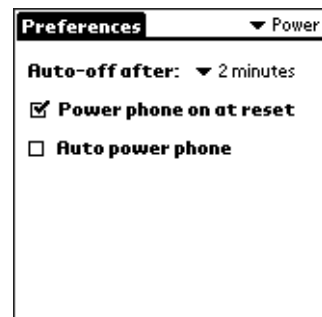
4. Roll the shuttle up or down. When the option you want to select is highlighted, press the shuttle in.

Guard Now Keyguard is turned on immediately.

Auto-Guard on Sleep Keyguard is automatically turned on when the phone is not in use.

Disable Auto-Guard Keyguard is not turned on automatically.

5. To adjust how quickly the phone goes into power-save mode, do the following:
 - a. Open the flip.
 - b. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
 - c. Tap  to open the last Preferences screen you used.
 - d. Tap the pick list in the upper-right corner and select **Power**.
 - e. Tap the ▼ beside **Auto-off after** and select 1, 2, 3, 5, or 15 minutes.



To turn Keyguard off

PHONE ➔ On

FLIP ➔ Closed

If you receive a call

- If you receive a call while Keyguard is on, just press  to answer the call. Keyguard is automatically turned off.

If you are not on a call

You can turn Keyguard off quickly at any time by doing any one of the following:

- Press the backlight button on the top of the phone.
- Press , followed by the digits 1, 2, and 3.
- Open and close the flip.

Showing or hiding private entries

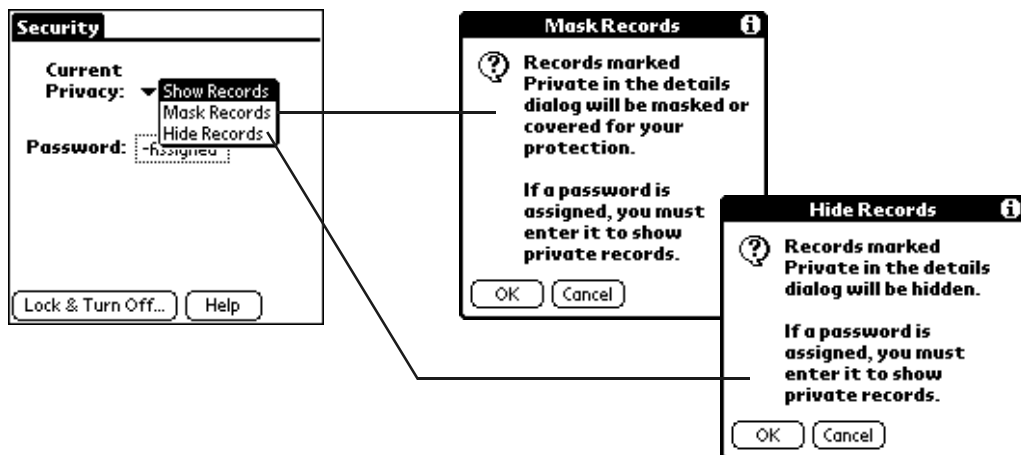
You can hide entries that you mark as private. If you assign a password to your private entries, you must enter that password before the entries appear. Note that the Kyocera smartphone merely hides the entries; it does not delete them.

To hide or mask private entries

PHONE May be either on or off

FLIP Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Security screen.
3. Tap the ▼ beside **Current Privacy**.



4. Select one of the following:
 - Hide Records** Records marked private do not appear in the Address Book.
 - Mask Records** Records marked private are covered with a gray box in the Address Book
5. Tap OK.
Once you have hidden or masked the private records, you must enter your lock code to view them.

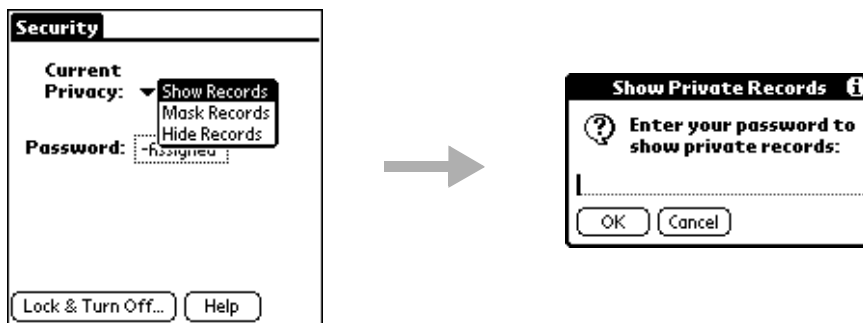
To show private entries

PHONE May be either on or off

FLIP Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Security screen.

3. Tap the ▼ beside **Current Privacy**.



4. Select **Show Records** from the pick list.
5. Enter your password and tap **OK**.

Locking the phone

You can lock your Kyocera smartphone so that no one can use either the phone or the PDA applications without entering a password. When the phone is locked, no calls can be made except emergency 911 calls.

CAUTION: Be aware that if you forget the password you have assigned when you lock the phone, you must perform a hard reset using the reset button to unlock your phone. Performing a hard reset with the reset button deletes all the data in the Kyocera smartphone. However, all previously synchronized data will be restored during your next HotSync operation.

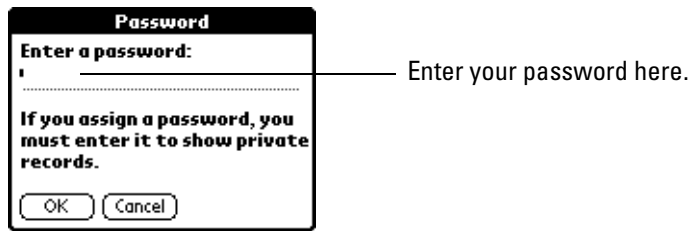
To lock the phone

- PHONE** ➔ On
- FLIP** ➔ Open

1. Perform a HotSync operation to synchronize the data on your Kyocera smartphone with your computer.
2. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
3. Tap  to open the Security screen.



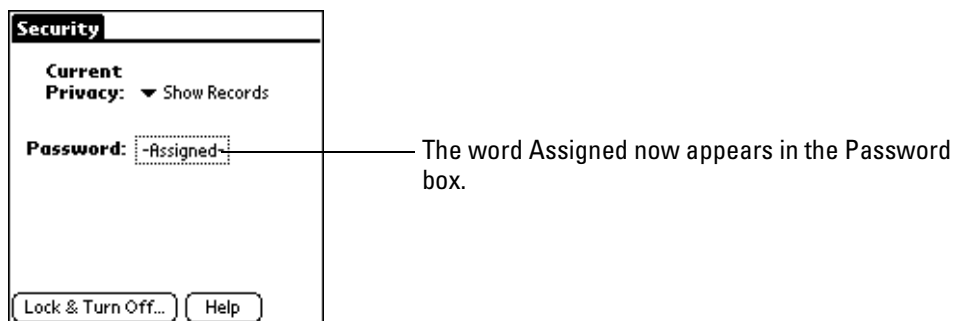
4. Tap the **Unassigned** box next to Password. The Password dialog appears.



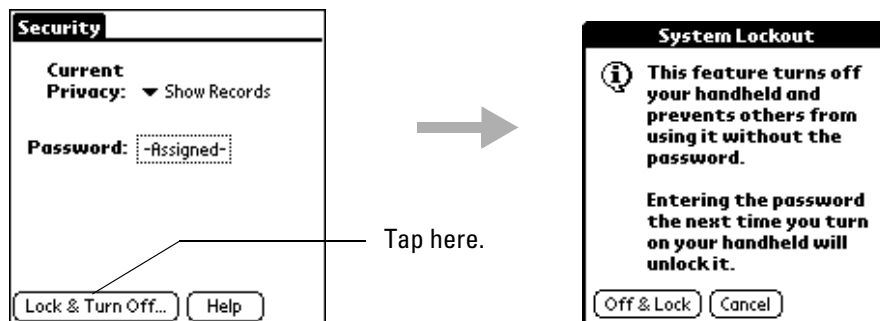
5. On the line, enter the password you want to use and tap **OK**. A password can contain any combination of numbers and letters.



6. Enter the password again to verify it. Tap **OK**.



7. Tap **Lock & TurnOff**.



8. To lock the phone, tap **Off & Lock**.
The screen becomes blank. The phone is now locked.

To unlock the phone

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Open

When the phone is locked, the following screen appears whenever you open the flip.



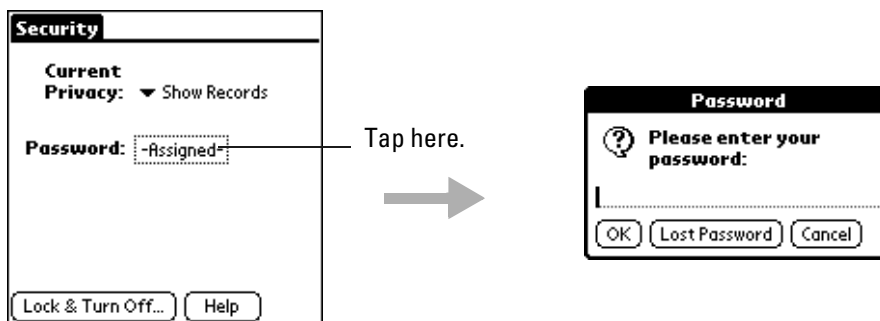
Enter your password and tap **OK**.

To change the password

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Security screen.
3. Tap the **Assigned** box beside Password.



4. Enter your password and tap **OK**.



5. To assign a new password, enter it on the line and tap **OK**. In the confirmation dialog, enter the *same* password again. Tap **OK**.
6. To remove password protection entirely, tap **Delete**.

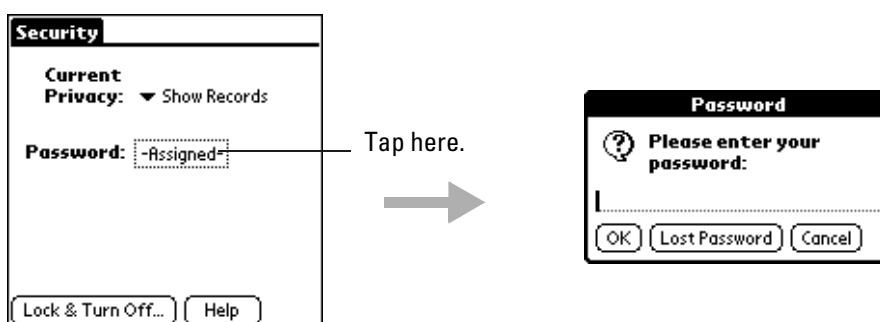
To recover from a forgotten password

If you forget your password, you can delete the password to free up the phone. However, deleting a password also deletes all entries and files marked Private. If you synchronize with your computer before deleting a forgotten password, the Kyocera smartphone restores your private entries the next time you perform a HotSync operation, but it does not restore the password.

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Security screen.
3. Tap the **Assigned** box beside Password.



4. Tap **Lost Password**.



5. Tap **Yes** to delete the password and all records and entries marked Private.

Chapter 14



Speed Dial

The Speed Dial application stores up to 199 phone numbers that you can call by pressing only one, two, or three keys (1–199). You can even put email addresses and Web pages into the Speed Dial application.

The names and numbers in the Speed Dial list are taken from the Address Book. Every time you change an entry, the Kyocera smartphone updates the Speed Dial list automatically.

In this chapter

- Adding an entry to the Speed Dial list page 229
- Making calls using Speed Dial page 231
- Editing the Speed Dial list page 232
- Deleting entries page 234
- Using Speed Dial menus page 235

Adding an entry to the Speed Dial list

You can put up to 199 phone numbers, email addresses, or URLs from your Address Book in the Speed Dial list. The numbers in the Speed Dial list are always selected from the Address Book so you only have to maintain the information in one place. Therefore, before you can use Speed Dial, you must first enter the names and numbers in the Address Book.

To add an entry to the Speed Dial list

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open Speed Dial.

Speed Dial		
#	Name	Phone Number
1	Home	555-111-1111 (H)
2	Office	555-222-2222 (W)
3	Mom and Dad	555-333-3333 (H)
4	Mei, Hua	555-444-4444 (H)
5	Neighbor, Ann	555-555-5555 (F)
6	Pet Shop	pets@site.com (E)
7	Lee's school	555-777-7777 (W)
8	Jen's school	555-888-8888 (W)
9	Vendor, J. J.	555-999-9999 (W)

Dial Add Move Clear

3. Tap Add.

Add To Speed Dial

Lookup a phone number in the Address list, or create a new entry ?

Lookup New Entry Cancel

To add a phone number from your Address Book to the Speed Dial list, continue with the steps below. To add a new phone number, skip to “If the phone number is not in your Address Book” on page 230.

If the phone number is already in your Address Book

1. In the Add to Speed Dial dialog, tap **Lookup**.

A list of all the names in your Address Book appears.



2. Tap the entry you want to add to the Speed Dial list. Then tap **Add**.
If the entry has more than one phone number, the following screen appears.

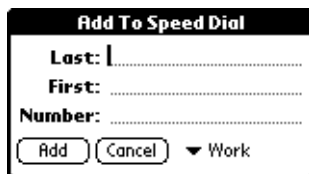


3. Put a check mark beside any of the phone numbers you want to add. Then tap **Add**.

Your new entry is added to the bottom of the Speed Dial list. To reassign Speed Dial numbers, see "To change Speed Dial numbers" on page 232.

If the phone number is not in your Address Book

1. In the Add to Speed Dial dialog, tap **New Entry**.



2. Using the stylus or the onscreen keyboard, enter the last name, first name, and phone number you want to put on the Speed Dial list.
3. Tap **Add**.
4. At the confirmation message, tap **OK**.

Making calls using Speed Dial

NOTE You cannot initiate conference calls from the Speed Dial application. If your service provider supports conference calls, you can initiate a three-way call by entering the numbers directly on the keypad or the Dialer.

To make a call from the Speed Dial list (with the flip open)

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open Speed Dial.

Speed Dial		
#	Name	Phone Number
1	Home	555-111-1111 (H)
2	Office	555-222-2222 (W)
3	Mom and Dad	555-333-3333 (H)
4	Mei, Hua	555-444-4444 (H)
5	Neighbor, Ann	555-555-5555 (F)
6	Pet Shop	pets@site.com (E)
7	Lee's school	555-777-7777 (W)
8	Jen's school	555-888-8888 (W)
9	Vendor, J. J.	555-999-9999 (W)

Dial Add Move Clear 

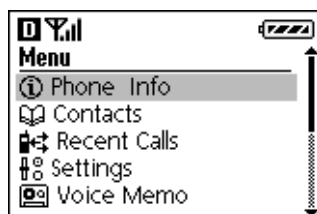
3. Tap to select the number you want to call.
4. Tap **Dial**.
5. When you have finished your call, press **End**.

To make a call from the Speed Dial list (with the flip closed)

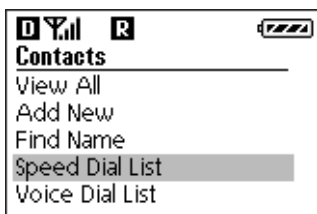
PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

1. Press the shuttle in to open the menu.



- Roll the shuttle down until **Contacts** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.



- Roll the shuttle down until **Speed Dial List** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.
- Roll the shuttle up or down to scroll through the Speed Dial list. When the person you want to call is highlighted, press .
- When you have finished your call, press .

Editing the Speed Dial list

In the Speed Dial list, you can change the Speed Dial numbers, sort the entries in several different sequences, and move or resize the columns.

To change Speed Dial numbers

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

- Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
- Tap  to open Speed Dial.
- Tap the entry you want to change to a different number.

Speed Dial		
#	Name	Phone Number
1	Home	555-111-1111 (H)
2	Office	555-222-2222 (W)
3	Mom and Dad	555-333-3333 (H)
4	Mei,Hua	555-444-4444 (H)
5	Neighbor,Ann	555-555-5555 (F)
6	Pet Shop	pets@site.com (E)
7	Lee's school	555-777-7777 (W)
8	Jen's school	555-888-8888 (W)
9	Vendor, J. J.	555-999-9999 (W)

Dial Add Move Clear

- With the entry highlighted, tap **Move**.



5. Tap once on the location line. Then using the stylus or the onscreen numeric keyboard, enter the Speed Dial number you want to assign to this entry.
6. Tap **Move**.
The entry is reassigned the new number you entered.

To resort the Speed Dial list

PHONE ▶ May be either on or off

FLIP ▶ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open Speed Dial.
3. Tap  to open the Speed Dial menus.
4. From the Options menu, tap one of the following:

Sort by Name	Speed Dial entries are sorted in alphabetical order by the last name or company name of the entry.
Sort by Call Frequency	Speed Dial entries are sorted by how often each number appears in Call History (including both incoming and outgoing calls). The most frequently contacted numbers appear at the top of the list.
Remove Blanks	All unused numbers within the Speed Dial list are removed.
5. In the Renumber confirmation dialog, tap **OK**.

To change column size or arrangement in the Speed Dial list

PHONE ▶ May be either on or off

FLIP ▶ Open

You can easily change the size or arrangement of the columns in the Speed Dial list. For example, if you prefer the Phone Number column to appear on the far left or if you want the Name column to be wider, you can drag the columns to suit your needs.

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open Speed Dial.
3. To rearrange the columns, place the stylus on the title of the column you want to move. Drag the column left or right.
4. To resize a column, place the stylus in the heading row on the line between the columns. Drag the column left or right to decrease or increase its size.

Deleting entries

You can remove entries from the Speed Dial list without deleting the entry from the Address Book.

To remove an entry from the Speed Dial list

PHONE May be either on or off

FLIP Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open Speed Dial.
3. Tap the entry you want to remove.

Speed Dial		
#	Name	Phone Number
1	Home	111-1111
2	Office	222-2222
3	Nichols, Tom	333-3333
4	Santos, Alicia	444-4494
5	Mom and Dad	555-5555
6	Jen's school	666-6666
7	Lee's school	777-7777
8		
9		

Dial Add Move Clear

4. With the entry highlighted, tap **Clear**.

Clear Entries

 **Clear selected items?**

Yes No

5. In the confirmation dialog, tap **Yes** to remove this number from the Speed Dial list or **No** to keep it.

If you delete the entry, it is removed from the Speed Dial list only. It is not removed from the Address Book.

6. Tap **Details**.

Address Entry Details

Show in List: ▼ Work

Category: ▼ Unfiled

Private: ☐

OK Cancel Delete... Note

7. Tap **Delete**.

Delete Address

 **Delete selected Address entry?**

☒ Save archive copy on PC

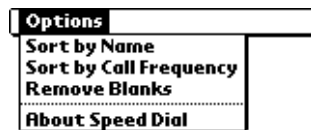
OK Cancel

8. If you want to keep a backup copy of this entry on your computer, put a check mark in the **Save archive copy on PC** check box. If you don't want to save a backup, remove the check mark.
9. In the confirmation dialog, tap **OK** to delete the entry or **Cancel** to keep it.
If you delete the entry, it is removed from both the Address Book and the Speed Dial list.

Using Speed Dial menus

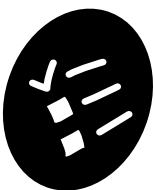
This section covers the menu commands specific to the Speed Dial list. For information about menu commands common to all applications, "Using menus" on page 59.

Options menu



Sort by Name	Speed Dial entries are sorted in alphabetical order by the last name or company name of the entry.
Sort by Call Frequency	Speed Dial entries are sorted by how often each number appears in Call History (including both incoming and outgoing calls). The most frequently contacted numbers appear at the top of the list.
Remove Blanks	All unused numbers within the Speed Dial list are removed.
About Speed Dial	Show version information for the Speed Dial application.

Chapter 15



To Do List

The Palm To Do List is a convenient place to create reminders of the things you have to do. Each item in your To Do list can be given a priority, a due date, and a category (such as Business or Personal). You can then sort your To Do list by any of these criteria.

In this chapter

- Creating To Do items page 237
- Setting Item Details page 238
- Displaying your To Do list page 240
- Using the To Do List menus page 242

Creating To Do items

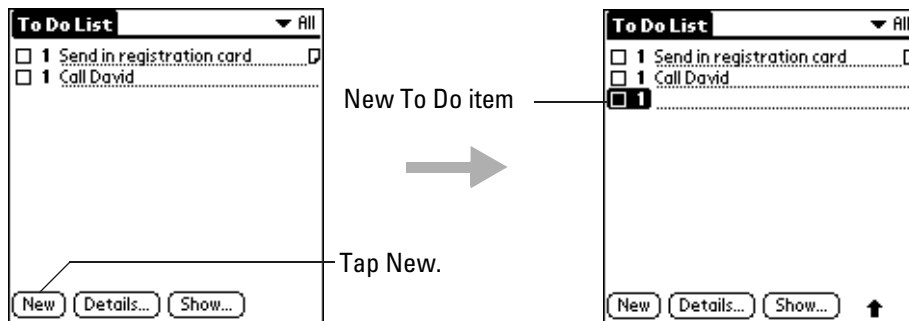
A To Do item is a reminder of a task that you have to complete. You can control the appearance, level of detail, and sort order of To Do items.

To create a To Do item

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the To Do List  key.
2. Tap **New** in the To Do List screen.



3. Enter the text for the item. The text can be longer than one line.
4. Tap anywhere on the screen to de-select the To Do item. If you begin to write in the Graffiti area without selecting a To Do item, a new item is automatically created.

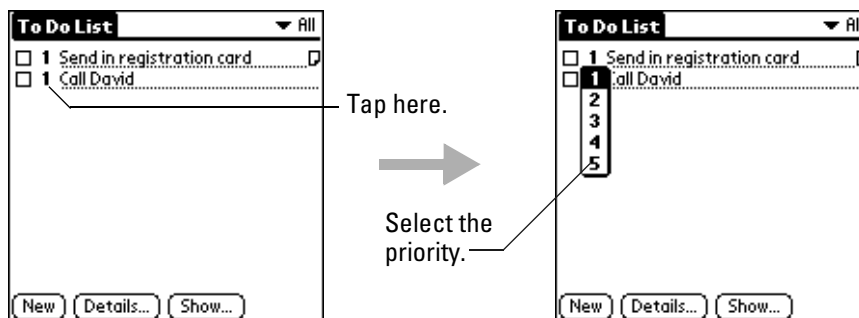
To set a priority level for a To Do item

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

You can arrange the tasks in your To Do List based on their relative levels of importance. The default setting for the To Do List is to arrange items by priority and due date, with priority 1 items (most important) at the top.

1. Press the To Do List  key.
2. Tap the Priority number on the left side of the To Do item.



3. Tap the Priority number for this item. (1 is most important; 5 is least important.)

To check off a To Do item

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the To Do List  key.
2. Tap the check box to the left of the To Do item.



The check mark shows that this item has been completed.

You can set the To Do List to either show or hide the items that you have checked off (completed). You can also record the date you completed an item. To set these options, see “Displaying your To Do list” on page 240.

Setting Item Details

Use the To Do Item Details dialog to set or modify categories, to set due dates, or to delete To Do items.

To assign a priority or category to a To Do item

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the To Do List  key.
2. Tap anywhere on the text of an item in the To Do List.
3. Tap **Details** to open the To Do Item Details dialog.



4. To assign a priority to the To Do item, tap 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5. You can sort the To Do list in order by priority.

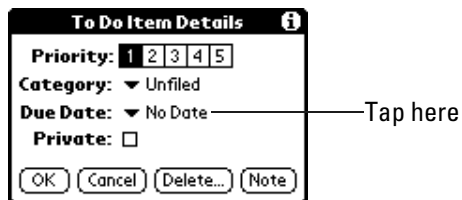
5. To assign a category to the item, tap the ▼ next to Category. Select any category you have set up.

Categories can help you file and view individual To Do items into groups for easy review.

To set a due date

You can assign a due date for any To Do item. You can also sort the items in the list based on their due dates.

1. Press the To Do List  key.
2. Tap **No Date** in the Details dialog to open the Due Date pick list.



3. Tap the Due Date for this item. Choose one of the following:

Today	Assigns the current date.
Tomorrow	Assigns tomorrow's date.
One week later	Assigns a date exactly one week from the current date.
No Date	Removes the due date from the To Do item.
Choose date	Opens the Due Date dialog where you can chose any date you want.

4. Tap OK to confirm your selection and close the To Do Details dialog.

NOTE: If you turn on the Show Due Dates option, you can tap directly on the due date in the To Do List to open the pick list shown above in step 2.

Deleting a To Do item

There are three ways to delete a To Do item—simply delete the text of the item, use the Menu command, or use the Details dialog.

To delete a To Do item by erasing the text

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the To Do List  key.
2. On the To Do list, drag the stylus through the text of the item you want to delete.

3. Draw the backspace stroke  to erase the text.

To delete a To Do item using the menus

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

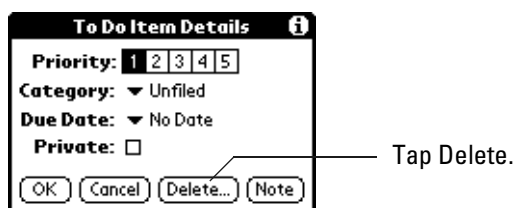
1. Press the To Do List  key.
2. Tap anywhere in the item you want to delete.
3. Tap the Menu  icon.
4. From the Record menu, tap **Delete Item**.

To delete a To Do item using the Details dialog

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the To Do List  key.
2. Tap once on the item you want to delete.
3. Tap **Details**.



4. Tap **Delete**.
5. In the Delete Memo dialog, tap **OK**.

Displaying your To Do list

You can control which items appear in your To Do list and how they are arranged. For example, you may not want to see items which have been completed or you might want to see due dates for all current items.

To change the Show Options settings

PHONE ➤ May be either on or off

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Press the To Do List  key.

2. Tap **Show** in the To Do List screen to open the To Do Preferences dialog.



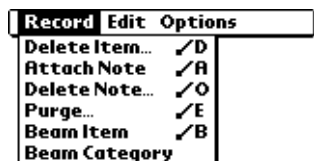
3. Select any of the following settings:

Sort by	Sort the To Do items in one of the following ways: ■ Priority, Due Date ■ Due Date, Priority ■ Category, Priority ■ Category, Due Date
Show Completed Items	Include completed tasks in the To Do List. If you turn off this setting, items disappear from the list when you check them.
Show Only Due Items	Show only items that are currently due, past due, or have no due date. With this setting, items do not appear in the list until their due date.
Record Completion Date	Replace the due date with the completion date when you complete an item. If you do not assign a due date, the completion date is recorded when you check off the item.
Show Due Dates	Display due dates for each item. An exclamation mark shows that the item is still incomplete and the due date is past.
Show Priorities	Show the priority numbers for all To Do items.
Show Categories	Show the category for each To Do item on the far right of the To Do List screen.

4. Tap OK to confirm your selections and close the dialog.

Using the To Do List menus

Record menu



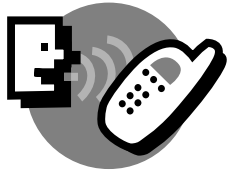
- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| Delete Item | Remove an item from the To Do List. Select the item before choosing this command. The Kyocera smartphone removes the item from the To Do list, but keeps a copy which is archived on your computer during your next HotSync operation. To remove the event completely, uncheck the Save archive copy on PC check box. |
| Attach Note | Add a note to the current To Do item. |
| Delete Note | Remove a note from a To Do item. Select the To Do item before choosing this command. |
| Purge | Delete all completed items. Completed items remain in the To Do List until you use this command. The Kyocera smartphone removes the items, but keeps copies which are archived on your computer during your next HotSync operation. To remove the events completely, uncheck the Save archive copy on PC check box. |
| Beam Item | Beam the current To Do item to to another device with an infrared port. |
| Beam Category | Beam all To Do Items in the current category to another device with an infrared port. |

Options menu



- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Font | Choose a different font (text) style for your To Do items. |
| Phone Lookup | Look up a phone number. |
| Security | Select Show Records, Mask Records, or Hide Records. |
| About To Do List | View version information for the To Do List application. |

Chapter 16



Voice Dial

Using Voice Dial, you make and answer calls by speaking commands. You can put up to 30 names from your Address Book in the Voice Book and call them simply by speaking their names.

Voice Dialing is particularly effective when the phone is in a hands-free car kit. You can then make and answer calls without taking your hands from the wheel.

In this chapter

- Training Voice Dial page 244
- Making and answering calls with Voice Dial page 245

Training Voice Dial

To use Voice Dial, you must first “train” the phone to recognize your voice. There are two types of voice tags to train.

Voice Book—You can put up to 30 names from your Address Book into your Voice Book. Once you have recorded these names, you can place calls simply by speaking them. You can record the voice tags using either the Address Book application or the Voice Dial application’s Voice Book.

Command words—Command words are instructions to the phone such as “Wake up,” “Yes,” and “No.” Once you have recorded these commands, you can instruct the phone to make voice calls. You must record these words using the Voice Dial application.

To put names in your Voice Book

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Voice Dial application.
3. Make sure that Voice Book appears in the pick list in the upper-right corner. If it does not, tap the ▼ and select **Voice Book**.
4. Tap **New**.
A list of all the names in your Address Book appears. If you have not entered names in the Address Book yet, see “Creating Address Book entries” on page 95.
5. Select a name and tap **Add**. If there is more than one phone number, select the one you want to use and tap **Add**.
6. Follow the spoken instructions. When you hear “Speak a name,” speak the name. Repeat the name when you are instructed to do so.

To train the command words

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Open

1. Tap  to view the Applications Launcher.
2. Tap  to open the Voice Dial application.
3. Tap the ▼ in the upper-right corner and select **Control Words** from the pick list.
4. Tap the word or phrase you want to train. Then tap **Train**.
5. When you hear the voice prompt, speak the command word. Repeat it when you are instructed to do so.
6. Follow the instructions until the voice prompt says “Training completed.”

Making and answering calls with Voice Dial

To make a call using voice commands

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ May be either open or closed

Before you can make a call using voice commands, you must “train” the phone to recognize your voice and you must place the names to be called in your Voice Book. See “Training Voice Dial” on page 244.

1. To activate voice dialing, do one of the following:
 - If the phone is in the cradle, in the hands-free car kit, or attached to external power, say “Wake-up” and wait for the beep. After the beep, say “Wake-up” again. If you prefer to use a different command than “Wake-up,” you can train the phone to respond to another word.
 - If the phone is not in the cradle, in the hands-free car kit, or attached to external power, press .

The message “Speak a name or press  to redial” appears on the screen. The voice prompt says “Speak a name.”
2. Speak the name of the person you want to call.
 - If the phone recognizes the name from your Voice Book, the voice prompt says “Calling [name]” and places the call.
 - If the phone does not recognize the name, the voice prompt says “Did you say _____?” and fills in the closest name match in your Voice Book. Answer “Yes” or “No” until the voice prompt speaks the correct name and places the call.

To answer a call using voice commands

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ May be either open or closed

1. If you want to answer incoming phone calls by voice, set up the phone as follows:
 - Place the phone in the cradle, in the hands-free car kit, or attach it to external power.
 - Make sure the phone is not set to vibrate instead of ringing. (See “Setting Sounds preferences” on page 215.)
 - Turn Auto-answer off. (See “Setting Phone preferences” on page 206.)

When you receive an incoming call, the voice prompt says “Incoming call. Answer?” or “Incoming roam call. Answer?” This message is given twice. If you do not respond, the phone rings.
2. To accept the call, answer “Yes” or press any key except .

3. To reject the call, answer “No” or press .

Voice Memos

You can record, save, and play back short voice recordings on your smartphone. For example, you might record a memo reminding yourself of something you want to do or buy. You can quickly record the memo at any time when the phone is turned on and then play it back later.

In this chapter

- Recording a voice memo page 248
- Replaying your voice memos page 250
- Managing your voice memos page 251

Recording a voice memo

You can record about 60 seconds of short memos on your Kyocera smartphone.

As you record a memo, you can see how long it is (in seconds) on the screen. When there are approximately 5 seconds remaining, you hear the voice prompt “Please finish recording.” When the available space for memos is full, you hear the message “Maximum length recorded” and recording stops.

To record a voice memo using the shuttle

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

You can record a voice memo simply by holding in the shuttle.

1. Press and hold the shuttle in.
After a few seconds, you hear “Please record at the tone” and a beep.
2. Release the shuttle and record your memo.



You can see how many seconds you have recorded on the screen.

3. To pause the recording, roll the shuttle up or down until the PAUSE symbol **||** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in. To resume recording after a pause, roll the shuttle up or down until the RESUME symbol **●** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.
4. To stop recording, press the shuttle in when the STOP symbol **■** is highlighted.

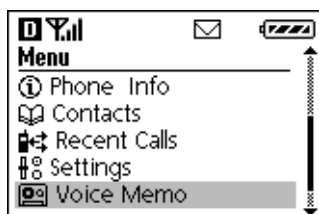
To record a voice memo using the menu

PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

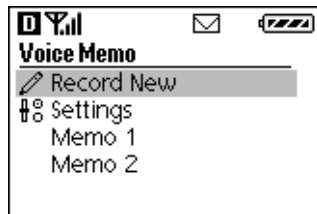
You can also record a memo using the flip-closed menus. This method provides additional options while you record.

1. From the home screen, press the shuttle in to open the menus.



- Roll the shuttle down until **Voice Memo** is highlighted. Press the shuttle in to select it.

The Voice Memo screen appears.



- With **Record New** highlighted, press the shuttle in.



- Record your memo.
- Roll the shuttle up or down to scroll through the options at the bottom of the screen. When the option you want to select is highlighted, press the shuttle in.



Stop recording.



Pause.



Play this memo.

Erase

Erase this memo.



If you have paused while recording a memo, resume recording.
Otherwise, append a new voice memo to the end of the current memo.

Name

Enter a name for this memo. See “To name a memo” on page 251.

- When you have finished recording the memo, press the shuttle in when  (Stop) is highlighted.
- To return to the Voice Memo screen, press . To exit the voice memo application entirely and return to the home screen, press .

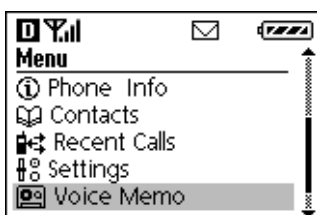
Replaying your voice memos

To replay a voice memo

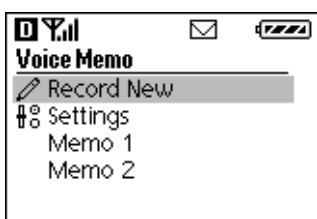
PHONE ➔ On

FLIP ➔ Closed

1. From the home screen, press the shuttle in to open the menus.



2. Roll the shuttle down until **Voice Memo** is highlighted. Press the shuttle in to select it.



Your voice memos are automatically numbered. You can give the memos names if you prefer. See

3. Roll the shuttle down until the memo you want to replay is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.



Date and time the memo was recorded
Length of the memo in seconds

4. Press the shuttle in to play the memo.
5. Roll the shuttle up or down to scroll through the options at the bottom of the screen. When the option you want to select is highlighted, press the shuttle in.



Play this memo.

Erase

Erase this memo.



Append a new voice memo to the end of this memo.

Name

Enter a name for this memo. See "To name a memo" on page 251.

- To close this memo and return to the Voice Memo screen, press **C**. To exit the voice memo application entirely and return to the home screen, press **END CALL**.

Managing your voice memos

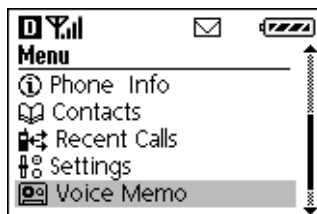
To name a memo

PHONE On

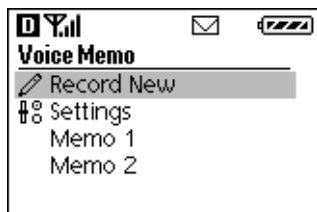
FLIP Closed

By default, your voice memos are numbered. They appear on the screen as Memo 1, Memo 2, and so on. However, if you prefer, you can enter names for your memos.

- From the home screen, press the shuttle in to open the menus.



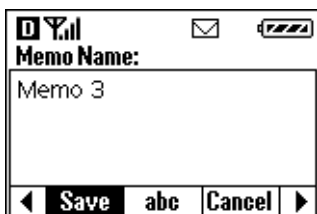
- Roll the shuttle down until **Voice Memo** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in. The Voice Memo screen appears.



- Roll the shuttle down until the memo you want to name is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.



4. Roll the shuttle down until **Name** is highlighted at the bottom of the screen. Then press the shuttle in. The Memo Name screen appears.



The phone is now in text entry mode. Use the keypad to enter or delete text.

5. If you want to delete the memo's existing name, press **C**. One letter is removed each time you press **C**.
6. To enter a new name, press the first letter of the name on the keypad.
For example, the 2 key is equivalent to *A*, *B*, or *C*. If you press the 2 key once, the letter *A* appears in the Memo Name window. If you press the 2 key twice, the letter *B* appears.
7. Wait a moment. The cursor moves one position to the right.
8. Press the key for the second letter of the name.
9. If you want to use upper-case and lower-case letters, roll the shuttle down until **abc** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in to toggle between upper-case and lower-case letters.

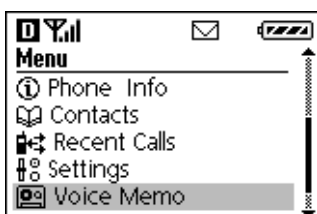
NOTE: The menu bar shows the case you can change to, not the case you are presently using. If **abc** appears, you are entering capital letters. Press the shuttle in to switch to lower-case letters. If **ABC** appears, you are entering lower case letters. Press the shuttle in to switch to capital letters.
10. When you have finished entering the name, roll the shuttle up or down until **Save** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.

To erase one memo

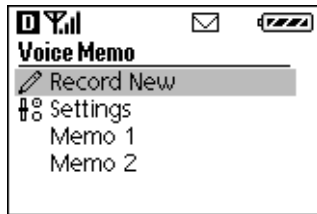
PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

1. From the home screen, press the shuttle in to open the menus.



- Roll the shuttle down until **Voice Memo** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in to select it. The Voice Memo screen appears.



- Roll the shuttle down until the memo you want to erase is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.



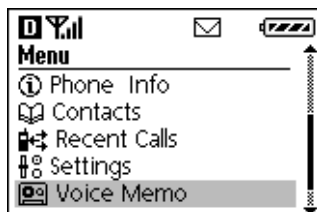
- Roll the shuttle down until **Erase** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.
- On the confirmation screen, with **Yes** highlighted, press the shuttle in to erase the memo.

To erase all memos

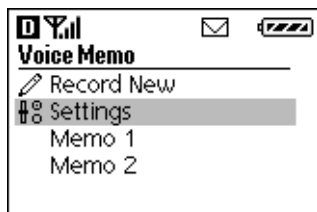
PHONE ➔ On

FLIP ➔ Closed

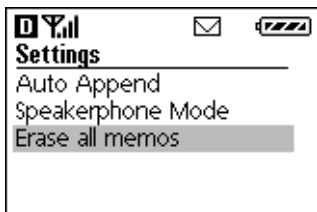
- From the home screen, press the shuttle in to open the menus.



- Roll the shuttle down until **Voice Memo** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in. The Voice Memo screen appears.



3. Roll the shuttle down until **Settings** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in. The Settings screen appears.



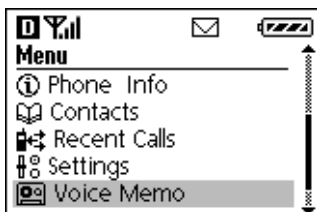
4. Roll the shuttle down until **Erase all memos** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.
5. On the confirmation screen, with **Yes** highlighted, press the shuttle in.

To adjust the Voice Memo settings

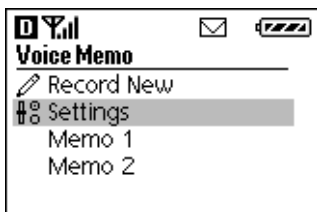
PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

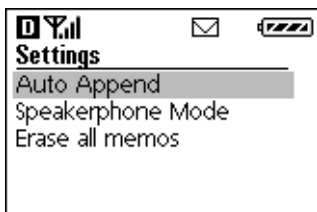
1. From the home screen, press the shuttle in to open the menus.



2. Roll the shuttle down until **Voice Memo** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in. The Voice Memo screen appears.



3. Roll the shuttle down until **Settings** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in. The Settings screen appears.



4. Highlight the option you want to select. Then press the shuttle in.

Auto Append

Yes—Each new voice memo is attached to the end of the previous memo.

No—Each time you record, a new voice memo is created. (This is the default setting.)

Speakerphone Mode

Yes—The phone automatically uses speakerphone mode for all memos.

No—When you record a memo, you can select either speakerphone or earpiece by pressing the speakerphone key .

Erase all memos

Yes—Delete all existing memos on the phone.

No—Do not delete all existing memos.

5. In the confirmation screen, answer Yes or No.



Troubleshooting

This chapter explains how to reset the Kyocera smartphone, how to troubleshoot problems, and where to find help.

If you encounter a problem with your phone, look in this section for the description that most closely matches the symptoms and try the suggestions listed.

For troubleshooting tips not included in this handbook, refer to either the README.TXT file or the HelpNotes file located in the C:\Palm directory on your computer. These files are also on the installation CD-ROM and diskettes.

In this chapter

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------|
| ■ Where to find help, | page 257 |
| ■ Resetting the phone, | page 258 |
| ■ Troubleshooting tips, | page 260 |
| ■ Phone care, | page 263 |
| ■ Safety information, | page 267 |

Where to find help

If you have a problem using the Kyocera smartphone, review the following:

Your service provider

For most questions about your phone and phone service, contact your service provider. Your service provider's customer support department can answer questions about your phone, phone bill, call coverage area, and specific features (such as call forwarding or voice mail) available to you.

Your phone documentation

If you have questions about the features of the phone, refer to this guide, as well as the *Kyocera Smartphone User's Guide*.

See also the **README** file and **HelpNotes**. (These files are located in the folder where you installed the Kyocera smartphone Desktop software on your computer, usually C:\Palm. If they are not there, you'll find them on your installation CD.) You can also download the latest versions of all documents from the Kyocera Wireless Corp. Web site (www.kyocera-wireless.com)

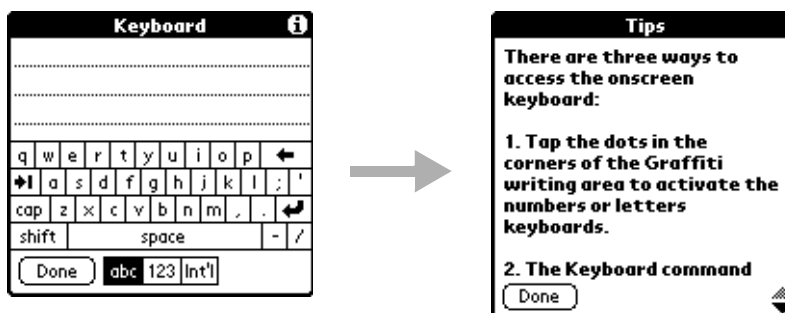
Help on the computer Desktop

The Kyocera smartphone Desktop software includes Online Help. Just open the Help menu.

Help on the phone

Many of the dialogs that appear on the Kyocera smartphone have an online tips icon in the upper-right corner. Online tips contain a summary of what is required by the dialog, shortcuts for using the dialog, or other useful information. Online tips always relate to the function you are currently doing.

1. Tap  in the upper-right corner of a dialog to open the Tips dialog.



2. Tap  to scroll through the information.
3. Tap **Done** when you have finished.

Customer Care Center

If you have additional questions, contact the Kyocera Wireless Corp. Customer Care Center in any of these ways:

- **Web site:** www.kyocera-wireless.com

- **Telephone:** (800) 349-4478 (U.S.A and Canada only) or (858) 882-1401
- **Email:** phone-help@kyocera-wireless.com

Before requesting support, please try to reproduce and isolate the problem. When you contact the Customer Care Center, call on another phone (not the Kyocera smartphone) since you may be instructed to remove the battery or reset the phone. Be ready to provide the following:

- The name of your service provider
- The actual error message or problem you are experiencing
- The steps you take to reproduce the problem
- The phone's electronic serial number (ESN). This number is in the battery compartment underneath the battery. You must remove the battery to see it.

Standards and safety information

For standards and safety information, visit the Cellular Telecommunications Industry Association (CTIA) Web site at **www.wow-com.com** or call (888) 901-SAFE (toll-free, U.S.A. only).

Resetting the phone

Under normal circumstances, you may never have to reset the Kyocera smartphone. However, on rare occasions, the phone may “hang” (no longer respond to buttons or taps with the keypad either open or closed). If the phone does not respond to taps or key presses with the flip either open or closed, you may need to perform a reset to get your phone running again.

There are two types of resets—a soft reset and a hard reset. In a soft reset, all records and entries are retained. In a hard reset, all records and entries are erased. If you must do a hard reset, you can restore any data that you previously synchronized using a HotSync operation.

To perform a soft reset

PHONE ➤ Off

FLIP ➤ Open

A soft reset tells the phone to stop what it is doing and start over again. All records and entries are retained. This type of reset is usually sufficient to solve any problem.

1. Turn the phone over. Open the battery door on the back of the phone.
2. Use the stylus to press the Reset button.
3. Replace the battery cover.

The Palm logo screen appears and remains on the screen for several seconds while the phone tests its memory and performs its startup operations.

You can also perform a soft reset by removing and reinstalling the battery.



To perform a hard reset

PHONE ➤ Off

FLIP ➤ Open

A hard reset tells the phone to start over and to erase all existing data.

CAUTION: When you do a hard reset, all entries stored in the phone are erased. Therefore, never perform a hard reset unless a soft reset has not solved the problem, or you intend to delete data, or you have been instructed to do so by Technical Support. After a hard reset, you can restore previously synchronized data from your computer to the phone by performing a HotSync operation.

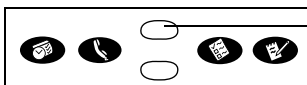
1. With the flip open, turn the phone over. Open the battery door on the back of the phone.
2. Press and hold down the backlight key on the top of the phone.
3. Keep holding down the backlight key as you do one of the following:
 - Use the stylus to press the reset pin.
 - or–
 - Remove and reinsert the battery. (Make sure the phone is turned off before removing the battery.)
4. When the Palm logo appears, release the backlight key.

The following message appears:

Erase all data?
YES - "up" button
NO - any other button

If you don't see this message, you have not performed a hard reset.

5. Press the Up button below the screen to complete the hard reset. Press any other button to cancel the procedure.



Press the Up button to complete the hard reset
and delete your data.
Press any other button to cancel the hard reset

The calibration screen appears.

NOTE: If the calibration screen does not appear, the hard reset was not accomplished. Go back to step 1 and try again.

6. Follow the instructions to calibrate the screen. When calibration is complete, the smartphone is ready to use.
7. Run a HotSync operation to restore the data on your computer to the smartphone.

Troubleshooting tips

HotSync operations

The HotSync operation fails to start.

- ☐ Make sure your computer is turned on, and that it does not shut down automatically as part of an energy-saving feature.
- ☐ Check the cable between the cradle and the computer serial port.
- ☐ Make sure you selected the correct serial port on the Local tab in the Setup dialog. Select the port where you connected the cradle.
- ☐ Make sure you are not running another program—such as America Online, CompuServe or WinFax—that uses the same serial port.
- ☐ Verify that HotSync Manager is running. If it is running, exit and restart it.
- ☐ Make sure you selected Local from the HotSync Manager menu or the Kyocera smartphone Desktop menu.

The HotSync operation does not run to completion.

- ☐ Do not turn the phone on or off during a HotSync operation.
- ☐ If you have problems using the As Fast As Possible option or a specific speed, select a lower baud rate setting on the Local tab in the Setup dialog.

- ☐ Read the HotSync Log for the user account for which you are synchronizing the phone and computer. The HotSync Log may indicate where the problem is occurring.

General troubleshooting

The phone does not turn on.

- ☐ Adjust the contrast control.
- ☐ Make sure the battery is installed properly.
- ☐ Charge the battery for about 15 minutes.
- ☐ Replace the battery. If the phone still does not operate, try a soft reset. (See “Resetting the phone” on page 258.)

The phone doesn’t recognize my handwriting.

- ☐ When you enter text with the stylus, you must use the Graffiti characters. See “Writing with the stylus” on page 52.
- ☐ Make the Graffiti character strokes in the Graffiti writing area, not on the display part of the screen.
- ☐ Make sure you are writing the strokes for letters in the left side, and the strokes for numbers in the right side of the Graffiti writing area.
- ☐ Make sure that Graffiti is not shifted into extended or punctuation modes. See Writing with the stylus, page 52.
- ☐ Recalibrate the screen. Choose Digitizer from the Preferences pick list and follow the directions.

When I tap screen icons, the right application or feature does not open.

- ☐ Recalibrate the screen. Choose Digitizer from the Preferences pick list and follow the directions.

When I tap , nothing happens.

- ☐ Not all applications or screens have menus. Try a different application.

Beaming does not function.

- ☐ Verify that the Beam feature is enabled (on the General Preferences screen). See Beaming information, page 91.
- ☐ Make sure the application you are using supports the Beam feature.
- ☐ Verify that the path between the two devices is clear of obstacles.
- ☐ Try using the Beam feature at different distances. The usual distance for beaming information is between five centimeters (approximately 2 inches) and one meter (approximately 40 inches). However, in some cases, you may find that greater distances work more effectively.

When data is beamed at the smartphone, an out-of-memory message appears.

- ☐ The Kyocera smartphone requires at least twice the amount of memory available as the data you are receiving. For example, if you are receiving a 30K application, you must have at least 60K free.

A message appears stating that the memory is full.

- ☐ Delete unused memos and records. If necessary, you can save these records on your computer using the Save Backup Copy option that appears in the Delete dialogs.
- ☐ If you have installed additional applications on your phone, remove them to recover memory.

Network

I can't get email on my phone.

- ☐ To receive email wirelessly, you must have over-the-air digital data coverage in your area. Contact your service provider.
- ☐ If you do not have digital data coverage, you may still be able to transfer email between your computer and the Kyocera smartphone during synchronization. You must have a Palm OS email program loaded on your phone. Exact procedures depend on the email program you are using.

I can't connect to the Web on my phone.

- ☐ To access the Internet, you must have over-the-air digital data coverage in your area. Contact your wireless telephone service provider.
- ☐ Before you can open a Web site on your phone, the Network Preferences must be set up. This is usually done by your service provider. See *Entering network settings*, page 173, and *Setting Phone preferences*, page 206.

Security

I forgot the password, and my phone is not locked.

- ☐ You can use the Security application to delete the password. If you do this, the Kyocera smartphone deletes all entries marked "Private." However, you can save and restore them using the following procedure:
 - a. Perform a HotSync operation *first* to back up your information.
 - b. From the Applications Launcher, tap . Tap the "Assigned" box next to Password. In the dialog, tap **Lost Password**. In the confirmation dialog, tap **Yes**. Your password is deleted; all entries marked private are also removed.
 - c. Synchronize the phone and your computer to restore the private entries.

I forgot the password, and my phone is locked.

- ☐ If you lock the phone and then forget the password, you must perform a hard reset to continue using your Kyocera smartphone. See "Resetting the phone" on page 258.

Applications

The current date doesn't appear when I tap Today.

- ☐ Make sure the General Preferences screen displays the current date. See *Setting General preferences*, page 204.

Entries seem to be missing in various applications.

- ☐ Tap the Categories pick list in the upper-right corner of the screen. Choose **All** to display all of the records for the application.
- ☐ Check the Security application and make sure that the Private Records setting is set to Show private records.

My Memo Pad entries are not sorted correctly.

- ☐ If you cannot manually arrange the order of the memos in the List screen, check the Memo Preferences setting. Make sure that Sort by is set to Manual. See Chapter 9, “Memo Pad.”
- ☐ The sorting preferences may be different on the Kyocera smartphone Desktop and in the Kyocera smartphone. Sorting preferences from the Desktop software are not transferred to the phone. The phone uses the sorting preferences you enter in the Memo Preferences screen.

In the Date Book Week View, I can't select overlapping events.

- ☐ In the Week View, you cannot select overlapping events that have the same start time. If you have two or more events with the same start time, choose the Day View for that day to see the overlapping events.

The Call History application shows a different number of calls on the main screen and the statistics screen.

- ☐ If you synchronize more than one Kyocera smartphone with the same user name, the statistics will differ. Call statistics show the calls on *one phone*. Call History shows the calls made by *one user* on all devices synchronized under the same name. (Be aware, however, that it is not a good practice to synchronize more than one device with the same user name. Other problems may occur.)

Phone care

Use these guidelines to optimize the performance and life of your phone, antenna, and battery.

Phone

- ☐ Do not let unauthorized personnel install or service your phone or accessories. Faulty installation or service may be dangerous and will invalidate your warranty.
- ☐ Only use approved accessories. Use of any unauthorized accessories may be dangerous and will invalidate your phone warranty if the accessories cause damage or a defect to the phone. See “Accessories” on page 267.
- ☐ Keep the phone dry. If the phone gets wet, turn the power off immediately. Let it dry before you use it again. In general, treat the Kyocera smartphone as you would a pocket calculator or other small electronic instrument.
- ☐ To avoid scratching the screen, always use the stylus or other plastic-tipped pen intended for a touch-sensitive screen. Never use a pen, pencil, or other sharp object on the surface of the screen.

- ☐ Treat the phone gently. The touch-sensitive screen contains a glass element. Do not drop the phone or subject it to any strong impact. Do not carry your phone in your back pocket. If you sit on it, the glass may break.
- ☐ Protect the phone from temperature extremes. Do not leave it on the dashboard of a car on a hot day, and keep it away from heaters and other heat sources. Store it out of direct sunlight.
- ☐ Do not store or use the phone in any location that is extremely dusty, damp, or wet.
- ☐ Use a soft, damp cloth to clean the phone. Use a soft, *dry* cloth to clean the screen.
- ☐ Avoid using suntan lotion around the phone. Chemicals in suntan lotions can damage your phone.

Antenna

- ☐ Fully extend the antenna when you place or receive a call.
- ☐ Do not touch the antenna while you are on a call. Do not bend or twist the antenna.
- ☐ When using the headset, keep the headset wire away from the antenna.
- ☐ When using the phone to connect to the Internet or send and receive email, make sure the extended antenna is at least 20 centimeters (8 inches) away from other people and is pointed away from them.

Battery

The Kyocera smartphone has a rechargeable lithium ion battery. You can charge the phone battery in either of these ways:

- Plug the power cable directly into the base of the phone. Plug the other end into an AC power outlet.
- Plug the power cable into the cradle. Plug the other end into an AC power outlet. Then place the phone in the sync cradle.

Leaving the phone in the cradle when you are not using it is a convenient way to keep the battery charged. You can purchase an additional battery, if you wish, that can be charged in the rear port of the cradle at the same time.



Caution

- ☐ Do not disassemble or short-circuit the battery.
- ☐ If you have not used an internal or external battery for more than a month, recharge it before using it.
- ☐ Do not charge any battery if the temperature is below 32°F (0°C) or above 122°F (50°C).
- ☐ Do not store any battery in hot areas for long periods of time. Use these storage guidelines:

under 1 month: -4° to 140°F (-20° to 60°C)
 over 1 month: -4°F to 113°F (-20° to 45°C)

- ❑ Never dispose of any battery in or near a fire. It could explode.

Tips for improving battery performance

As you use your Kyocera smartphone, you may notice that the battery seems to drain more quickly at some times than at others. Follow these suggestions to maximize battery life.

- ❑ Fully charge the battery before prolonged use.
- ❑ Turn off the phone if you are not planning to make or receive calls for a while. Even in standby mode, the phone uses a small amount of power to maintain contact with the local phone provider. Remember that you can use all the Palm applications without turning on the phone.
- ❑ Fully extend the antenna when on a call. In addition to providing the best reception, the antenna draws less power when it is up.
- ❑ Be aware that certain features draw more power than others. You may want to limit or turn off those that are not important to you.

Backlight	Minimize the use of the backlight.
Vibrate	Using the vibrate feature to signal incoming calls requires more power than using the ringer. Consider using the vibrate feature only in meetings and public places.
High volume settings	High volume settings for the earpiece and ringer use more power than low settings. Select as low a setting as is comfortable for you.
Alerts	Heavy use of alerts for voice mail and other messages drains battery power, particularly if you have set up persistent alerts that repeat frequently. You may wish to limit alerts to those things that are most important.
Auto-off after	Select a shorter "Auto-off after" period on the Power Preferences screen. This feature blanks the screen and deactivates the Palm applications on your phone after 1, 2, 3, 5, or 15 minutes of non-use. The shorter a time you select, the more energy is conserved.
Data services	Data calls require more power than normal voice calls.
Accessories	Unplug all non-charging accessories such as data cables from the phone when you are not using them.
Speakerphone	Using the phone in Speakerphone mode requires more power than receiving sound through the earpiece.
Beaming	If you don't use the Beaming feature to receive data from other phones or Palm connected devices, turn Beam Receive Off.

Additional factors that affect battery performance

In addition to settings and features you can adjust, there are a number of service-related factors that affect the amount of power your phone draws from the

battery. Although you cannot control these factors, they are listed here to help you understand why battery talk times and standby times may vary.

Analog-only areas	In analog-only service areas, your phone uses much more power (both on calls and in standby mode) than when it is in a digital service area. It does not matter whether the phone is roaming or in its home area
Distance from base stations	In CDMA digital mode, the farther you are from a base station, the more power your phone uses.
Calls vs. standby time	Your phone uses more power during calls than when it is in standby mode.
High-traffic times and places	In CDMA digital mode, the more people there are using the network, the more power your phone uses. At high-traffic times (such as weekends) or in high-traffic places (such as shopping malls), the phone must draw more power from the battery than at other times.
No service areas	In areas with no wireless phone service at all, your phone uses more power as it searches for a signal. If it cannot locate a signal after a set period of time, your Kyocera smartphone goes into power-save mode.
Changes in carrier	As you travel, your phone switches to other service providers. These other providers may have network settings that are different from your home service provider. Network settings can affect a phone's performance in a given area.

Replacing the battery

If you have to replace the battery in your Kyocera smartphone, be aware of the following considerations.

- ☐ If the battery becomes low in the course of normal use, an alert appears on the screen describing the low battery condition. When you see the alert, perform a HotSync operation to back up your data before you replace the battery. This helps prevent accidental data loss.
- ☐ If the Kyocera smartphone does not turn on when you press the Power/End key on the keypad, recharge the battery immediately.
- ☐ Before replacing the battery, turn the phone off. Never remove the battery while the telephone features are active. To verify that the phone is turned off, open the flip. The words "Phone is off" appear at the top of the screen.
- ☐ Only remove the battery to replace it with another battery. Don't leave the battery out of the Kyocera smartphone. For example, if your battery becomes drained while you are traveling and you don't have a second battery or a cradle to recharge it, it is better to leave the drained battery in the phone than to remove it.
- ☐ If the battery drains completely, the phone no longer operates. However, the built-in backup battery stores your clock settings for about two days and your data for about seven days. There is enough residual energy in the battery to store the data, but not enough to turn on the phone.

- ❑ If you leave a drained battery in the phone for an extended period of time (more than seven days), you can lose all of the stored data. If this happens, replace the battery and reset the phone. Then perform a HotSync operation to restore data from your computer.
- ❑ Whenever you remove the battery and reinsert it, the Kyocera smartphone does a soft reset. No information is deleted in a soft reset; all records and entries are retained. For details, see “Resetting the phone” on page 258.
- ❑ After you have replaced the battery, always check the clock settings.

Accessories

Accessories for your phone may include a Hands-free Headset, travel charger, data cable, and more.

To purchase accessories, visit www.kyocera-wireless.com/store. You may also call (800) 211-1537 (U.S.A. only) or (510) 683-4004.

Safety information

Radio frequency (RF) energy

Your Kyocera smartphone is a radio transmitter and receiver. When it is on, it receives and also sends out RF energy. Your service provider’s phone network controls the power level of the RF signal. This power level can range from 0.006 watts to 0.6 watts.

There are situations in which wireless phones must be turned off for reasons of safety. You can quickly turn off the phone simply by holding down the  key on the keypad for a few seconds.

Exposure to RF energy

In August 1996, the U.S. Federal Communications Commission (FCC) adopted RF exposure guidelines with safety levels for hand-held wireless phones. These guidelines are consistent with the safety standards previously set by both U.S. and international standards bodies in the following reports:

- **ANSI C95.1** (American National Standards Institute, 1992)
- **NCRP Report 86** (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, 1986)
- **ICNIRP** (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection, 1996)

Medical devices

Pacemakers—If your portable wireless phone is too close to a pacemaker, the phone's RF energy may interfere with the pacemaker's operation. The Health Industry Manufacturers Association and the wireless technology research community recommend that you follow these guidelines to minimize the potential for interference.

- Always keep the phone at least six inches (15 centimeters) away from your pacemaker when the phone is turned on.
- Do not carry your phone near your heart.
- Use the ear opposite the pacemaker.
- If you have any reason to suspect that interference is taking place, turn off your phone immediately.

Hearing aids—Some digital wireless phones may interfere with hearing aids. In the event of such interference, you may want to consult your service provider or call the customer service line to discuss alternatives.

Other medical devices—If you use any other personal medical device, consult the manufacturer of the device to determine if it is adequately shielded from external RF energy. Your physician may be able to help you obtain this information.

In health care facilities—Turn your phone off in health care facilities when instructed. Hospitals and health care facilities may be using equipment that is sensitive to external RF energy.

Avoiding potentially unsafe areas

Posted facilities—Turn your phone off in any facility when posted notices require you to do so.

Aircraft—FCC regulations prohibit using your phone on a plane that is in the air. Turn your phone off before boarding aircraft.

Vehicles—RF signals may affect improperly installed or inadequately shielded electronic systems in motor vehicles. Check with the manufacturer or its representative regarding your vehicle. You should also consult the manufacturer of any equipment that has been added to your vehicle.

Blasting areas—To avoid interfering with blasting operations, turn your phone off when you are in a blasting area or in areas posted "Turn off two-way radio." Obey all signs and instructions.

Potentially explosive atmospheres—Turn your phone off when you are in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere. Obey all signs and instructions. Sparks in such areas could cause an explosion or fire resulting in bodily injury or even death.

Areas with a potentially explosive atmosphere are often, but not always, clearly marked. They include

- Fueling areas such as gas stations

- Below deck on boats
- Transfer or storage facilities for fuel or chemicals
- Vehicles using liquefied petroleum gas, such as propane or butane
- Areas where the air contains chemicals or particles such as grain, dust, or metal powders
- Any other area where you would normally be advised to turn off your vehicle engine

Driving safely

Before you use your phone while driving, check the local laws and regulations on the use of portable wireless phones in vehicles. Always obey them, and exercise caution while driving.

The following guidelines are based on recommendations of the Cellular Telecommunications Industry Association (CTIA).

1. Get to know your wireless phone and its features such as speed dial and redial.
2. Use a hands-free device such as the Hands-free Headset. For ordering information, see “Accessories” on page 267.
3. Position your wireless phone within easy reach. If you get an incoming call at an inconvenient time, let your voice mail answer it for you.
4. Let the person with whom you are speaking know you are driving.
5. Do not utilize any of the Palm applications while driving.
6. Dial sensibly. If possible, place calls when you are not moving or before pulling into traffic.
7. Do not engage in stressful or emotional conversations.
8. Use your wireless phone to call for help. Remember, 9-1-1 is a free call (U.S.A. only) on your wireless phone!
9. Use your wireless phone to help others in emergencies. Call roadside assistance or other non-emergency wireless assistance numbers when necessary.

For more information, call (888) 901-SAFE (in the U.S.A.) or visit CTIA’s Web site at **www.wow-com.com**.

Failure to follow these instructions may lead to serious personal injury and possible property damage.

Air bags

If you have an air bag, DO NOT place installed or portable phone equipment or other objects over the air bag or in the air bag deployment area. Air bags inflate with great force. If equipment is not properly installed, you and your passengers risk serious injury.

Phone Menus

Using the flip-closed menus, you can make many adjustments to the way your phone operates. These menus also include direct access to your Contacts list, Recent Calls list, and Messages list.

In this chapter

- Making selections from flip-closed menus page 271
- Phone Info menu page 275
- Contacts menu page 275
- Recent Calls menu page 275
- Settings menu page 276
- Voice Memo menu page 284
- Messages menu page 284

Making selections from flip-closed menus

When the phone is turned on and the flip is closed, the home screen appears. This screen displays status icons as well as the date and time. Across the bottom of the screen is a black bar. Depending on whether you are using the large icon view or the list menu view, you see either **Menu** or **Phone Info** on this bar.

Using list menus



Using large icons



Follow the procedures in this section to open and use the flip-closed menus. To change from list view to icon view, see “Changing the menu view” on page 273.

When you are not on a call

To select options in List Menu view

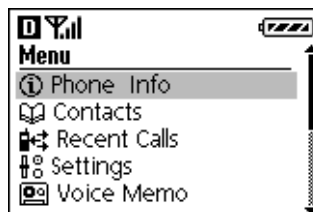
PHONE ➤ On

FLIP ➤ Closed

When you turn on the phone, the word **Menu** appears in the black bar at the bottom of the home screen (unless you have changed your Display preferences).

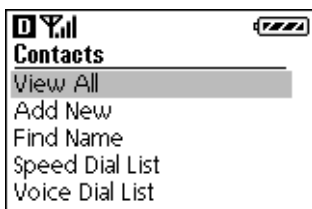


1. Press the shuttle in to open the menu.



2. Roll the shuttle up or down until the option you want to select is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.

You may see other menu options under the first. For example, if you select Contacts, the following screen appears.



Press the shuttle up or down to move through the options. Press the shuttle in when the one you want is highlighted.

3. Press the shuttle up or down to move through the options. Press the shuttle in to select a highlighted option.
4. To exit from an option or move up one menu level, press **C** or roll the shuttle up twice.
5. To exit all menus and return to the home screen, either hold down **C** or press **End Call**.

To select options in Large Icon view

PHONE On

FLIP Closed

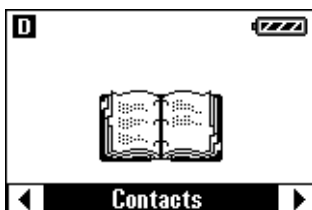
When you turn on the phone, the words **Phone Info** appear in the black bar at the bottom of the home screen.

1. Roll the shuttle down to move to the right. Roll the shuttle up to move to the left. Each of the six top menu options appears on a separate screen with a large identifying icon.



Phone Info

Check information such as your phone number and current phone state (at home, roaming, or without service)



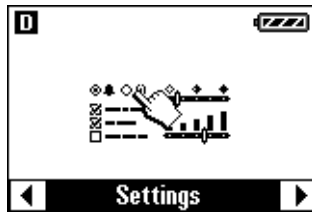
Contacts

Find and view information from your Address Book, Speed Dial list, or Voice Dial list



Recent Calls

See a list of your recent incoming, outgoing, and missed calls



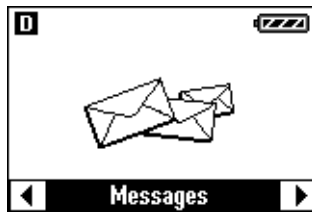
Settings

Adjust sounds; make many other adjustments to your Kyocera smartphone



Voice Memo

Record, edit, or play voice memos



Messages

Check your voice mail

2. When you see the option you want to select, press the shuttle in.

During a call

During a call, the menu strip displays the word **Options**. Press the shuttle in to see the following options:

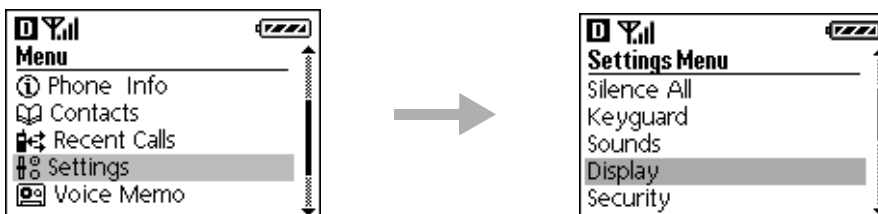
Phone Info	Check information such as your phone number and current phone state (at home, roaming, or without service)
Volume	Press the shuttle up or down to adjust the volume during a call.
Mute or Unmute	Mute the sound so the caller cannot hear you.
Pause or Release	If you have put hard pauses in the number you are calling, the phone stops dialing when it reaches the hard pause. The options Pause and Release appear. Select Release to continue dialing. See "To enter pauses in a phone number" on page 99.

Changing the menu view

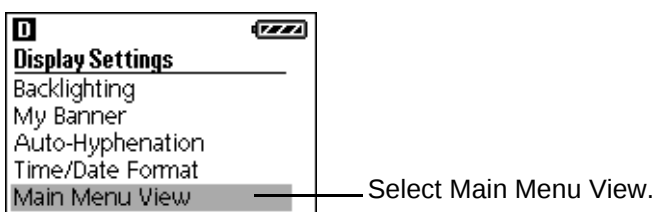
You can view the top level menus as either individual icons or a list. To change the view, follow these steps.

1. From the home screen, press the shuttle in to open the menu.

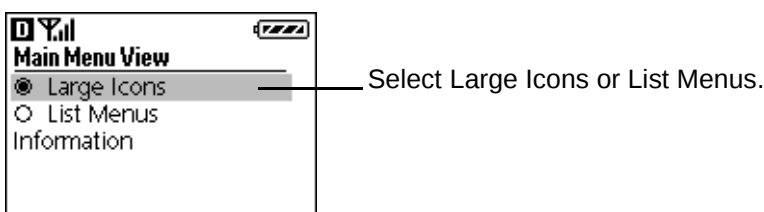
- On the Menu screen, roll the shuttle down until **Settings** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.



- Roll the shuttle down until **Display** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in to open the Display Settings menu.



- Roll the shuttle down until **Main Menu View** is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.



- Roll the shuttle down until the option you want is highlighted. Then press the shuttle in.
- Press  to return to the home screen.

If you selected Large Icons, the words **Phone Info** appear at the bottom of the screen. If you selected List Menus, the word **Menu** appears at the bottom of the screen.

Using list menus



Using large icons



Phone Info menu

Phone Info

Select **Phone Info** to see your phone number, the amount of memory you have available, and the phone's current status (for example Digital Roam).

Contacts menu

Contacts

Select **Contacts** to view information or place calls to the people or businesses in your Address Book, Speed Dial list, or Voice Dial list.

View All

Roll the shuttle up or down to scroll through your contacts. With a contact highlighted, press the shuttle in to see all the phone numbers for this entry. Highlight the number you want to call and press .

Add New

Open the flip. The Address Book appears where you can add a new record.

Find Name

Use the keypad to enter a name to search for in the Address Book.

Speed Dial List

Roll the shuttle up or down to scroll through the list of your Speed Dial numbers. Press  to call the highlighted entry.

Voice Dial List

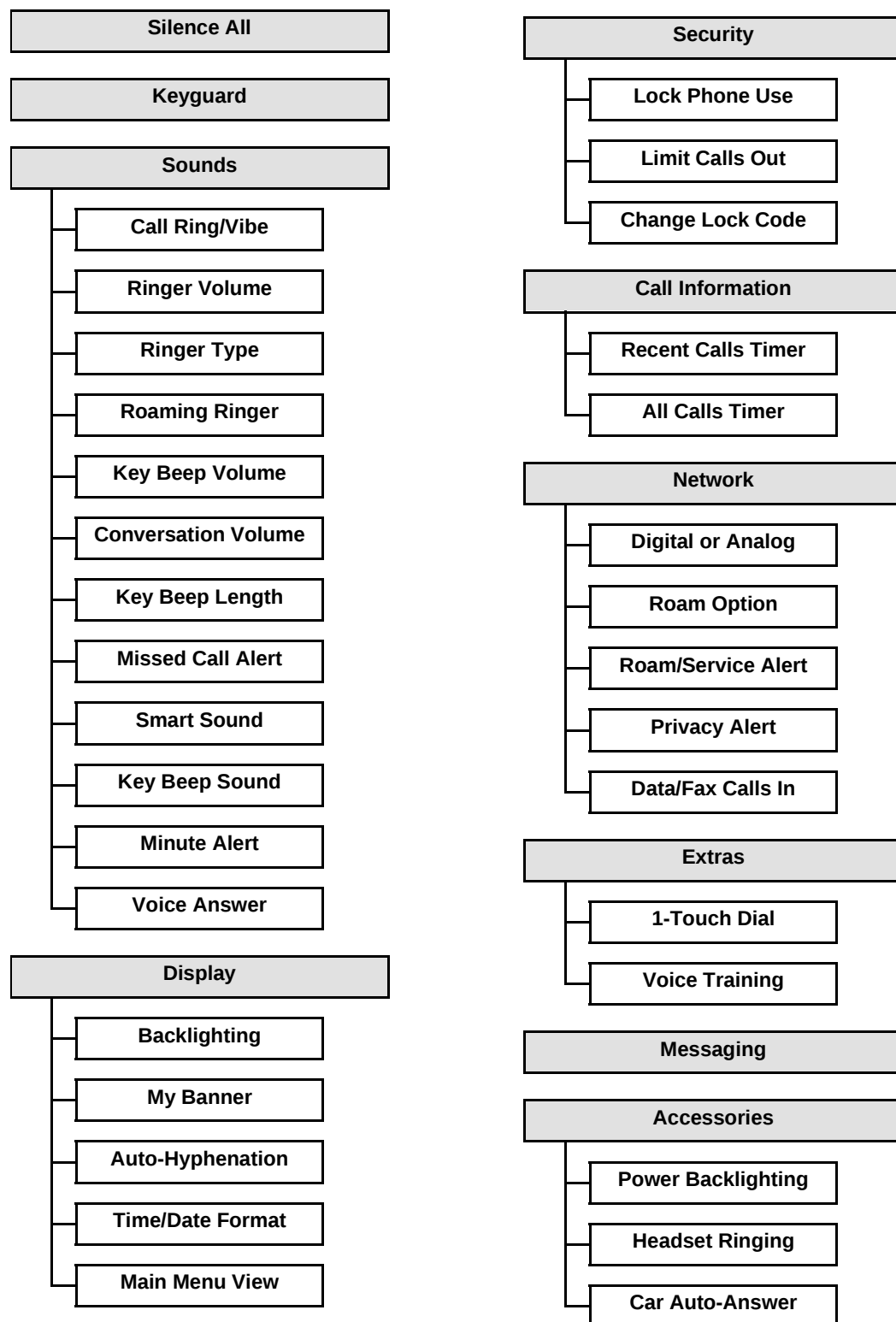
Roll the shuttle up or down to scroll through the list of your Voice Dial numbers.

Recent Calls menu

Recent Calls

Select **Recent Calls** to view the 30 most recent unique calls. Roll the shuttle up or down to move through the list. With a call highlighted, press the shuttle in to see information about the call. To return a call, highlight the entry and press .

Settings menu



Silence All option

Use Silence All to quickly turn off all the sounds on your Kyocera smartphone. This feature is useful during meetings, for example, when you do not want the phone to make any noise. All ringers, alerts, and other tones are silenced.

Silence All

Select **Silence All** to turn all sounds off. Select from the following options:

- **No, normal:** Sounds are on.
- **Yes, vibrate only:** The phone vibrates when you receive an incoming call or other message alert.
- **Yes, lights only:** The backlight flashes when you receive an incoming call or other message alert.

Keyguard option

Keyguard protects your phone against accidental key presses, for example, if the phone is turned on while it is in a briefcase or handbag. When Keyguard is on, the screen is blank and the LED flashes, but keypad is locked. You can still answer calls when Keyguard is on, but you cannot make any calls (including E911 calls) until you turn Keyguard off.

Keyguard

Select **Keyguard** to lock the keypad and put the phone in power-save mode. Select from the following options:

- **Guard Now:** Turn on Keyguard immediately.
- **Auto-Guard on Sleep:** Turn on Keyguard whenever the smartphone has not been used for the time you specified in the Phone Preferences screen (1, 2, 3, 5, or 15 minutes).
- **Disable Auto-Guard:** Do not turn on Keyguard automatically when the smartphone is not in use.

Sound options

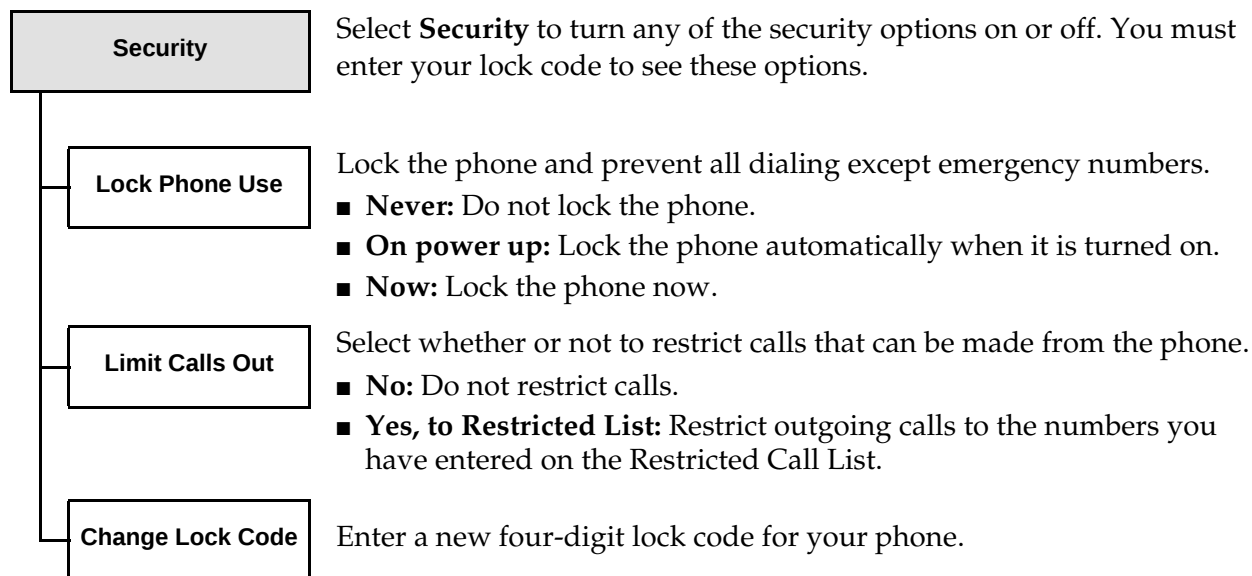
Sounds	Select Sounds to adjust the volume settings and select the types of sounds you want to hear for ringers and alerts.
Call Ring/Vibe	Select Ring only , Vibrate only , or Vibrate then ring to signal an incoming call.
Ringer Volume	Select from five volume settings for the ringer. Roll the shuttle up to hear samples of the sounds. Press the shuttle to select the volume level you want
Ringer Type	Open the flip to select from many ringer sounds or to assign different ringers to different categories of calls.
Roaming Ringer	Select Disabled or Enabled to use a different ringer sound when you are roaming than when you are in your home service area.
Key Beep Volume	Select Off or any of four volume settings for the beep you hear when you press keys on the keypad.
Conversation Volume	Select from seven volume settings for the sound in the earpiece. You hear a sample of each sound.

Key Beep Length	Select Normal or Long to set the length of the tones you hear when you make a call.
Missed Call Alert	Select Disabled or Enabled . When this alert is on, you hear a single tone every five minutes to signal a missed call.
Smart Sound	Select Disabled or Enabled . When Smart Sound is on, the phone automatically adjusts earpiece volume during a call based on the surrounding noise levels.
Key Beep Sound	Select Tones or Clicks to set the sound you hear when you press keys on the keypad.
Minute Alert	Select Disabled or Enabled . When this alert is on, you hear a beep 10 seconds before the end of each minute during a call.
Voice Answer	Select Disabled or Enabled . When this alert is on, after one ring, a voice prompt asks you whether you want to answer the phone or not. If you answer "Yes," the call is answered. If you answer "No," the call is sent to your voice mail. To use this method, the phone must be attached to a hands-free car kit, the sync cradle, or other powered accessory.

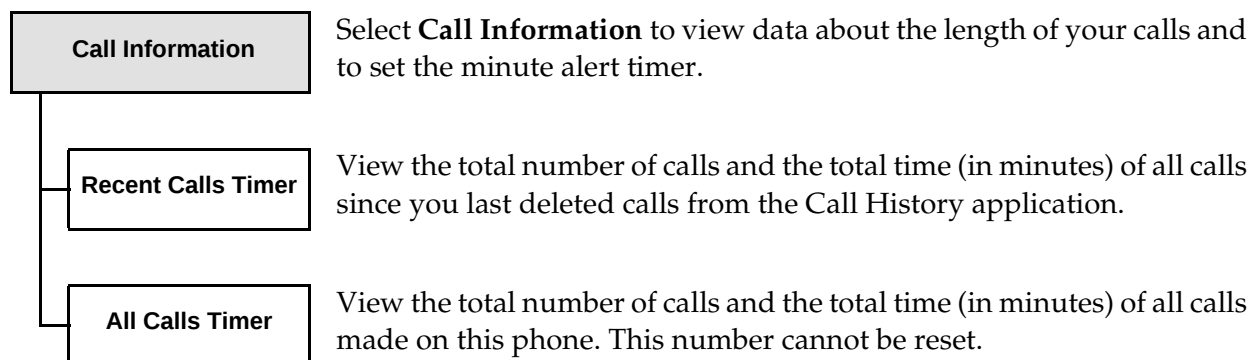
Display options

Display	Select Display to make adjustments to the screen display.
Backlighting	Select how long you want the backlight on the screen to stay on. ■ Disabled: The backlight does not come on. ■ 10 seconds: The backlight stays on for 10 seconds. ■ 30 seconds: The backlight stays on for 30 seconds. ■ 10 sec & in call: The backlight stays on for 10 seconds except during calls. It remains on for the duration of all phone calls. ■ 30 sec & in call: The backlight stays on for 30 seconds except during calls. It remains on for the duration of all phone calls.
My Banner	Open the flip. The Phone Preferences screen appears. In the Idle Banner field, enter or edit the text you want to appear across the top of the screen (for example, your name).
Auto-Hyphenation	Select Disabled or Enabled . When Auto-Hyphenation is enabled, hyphens are inserted in phone numbers according to the U.S. dialing plan (or other factory-specified plan)
Time/Date Format	Open the flip. The Formats Preferences screen appears. Tap the Time and Date pick lists and select the format you want to use.
Main Menu View	Select the way you want the top level menus (Phone Info, Contacts, Recent Calls, Settings, and Messages) to appear. ■ Large Icons: The initial menu items appear as icons, one per screen. ■ List Menus: The initial menu items appear as a single list.

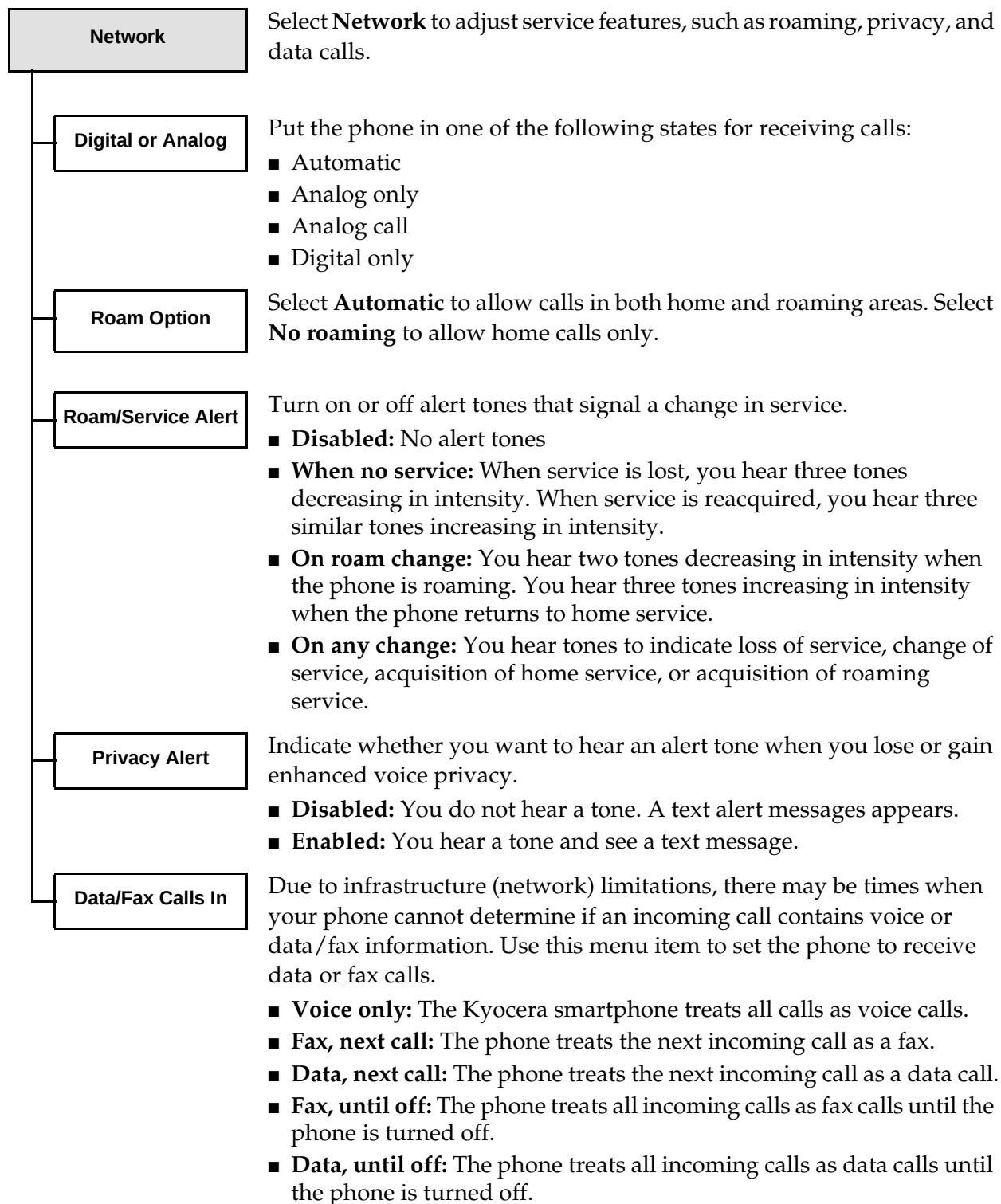
Security options



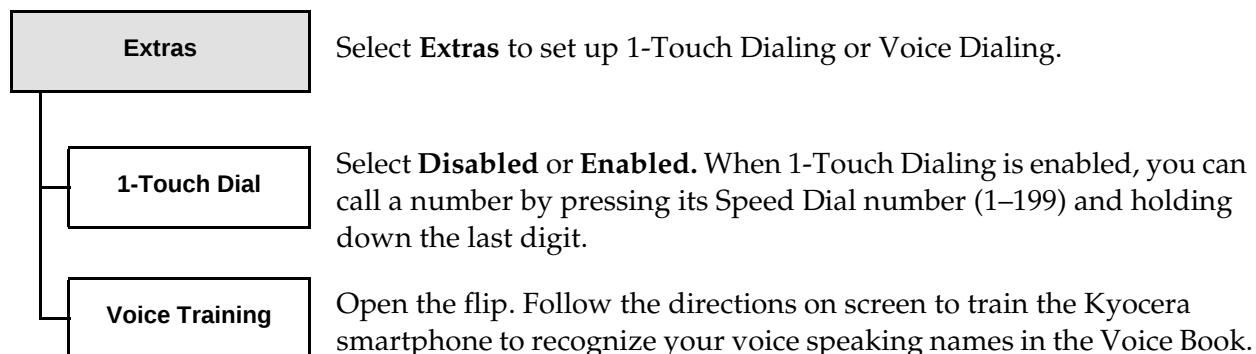
Call Information options



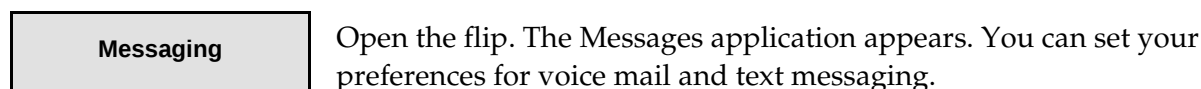
Network options



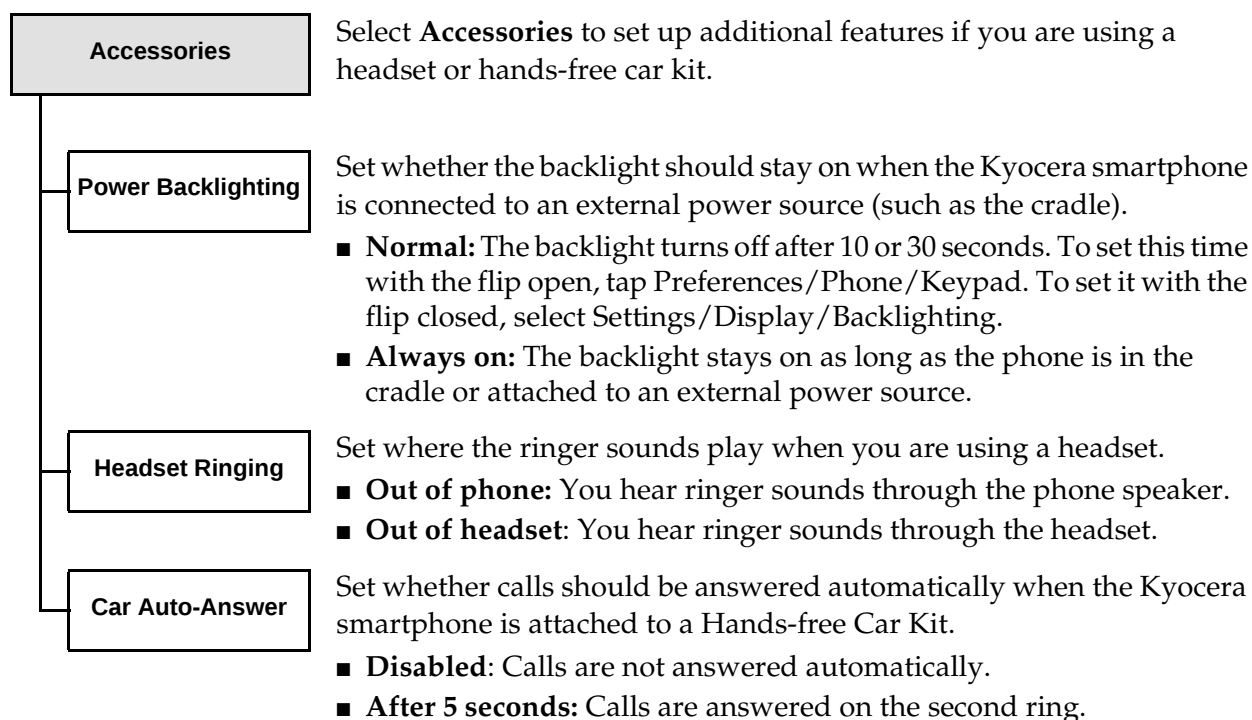
Extras options



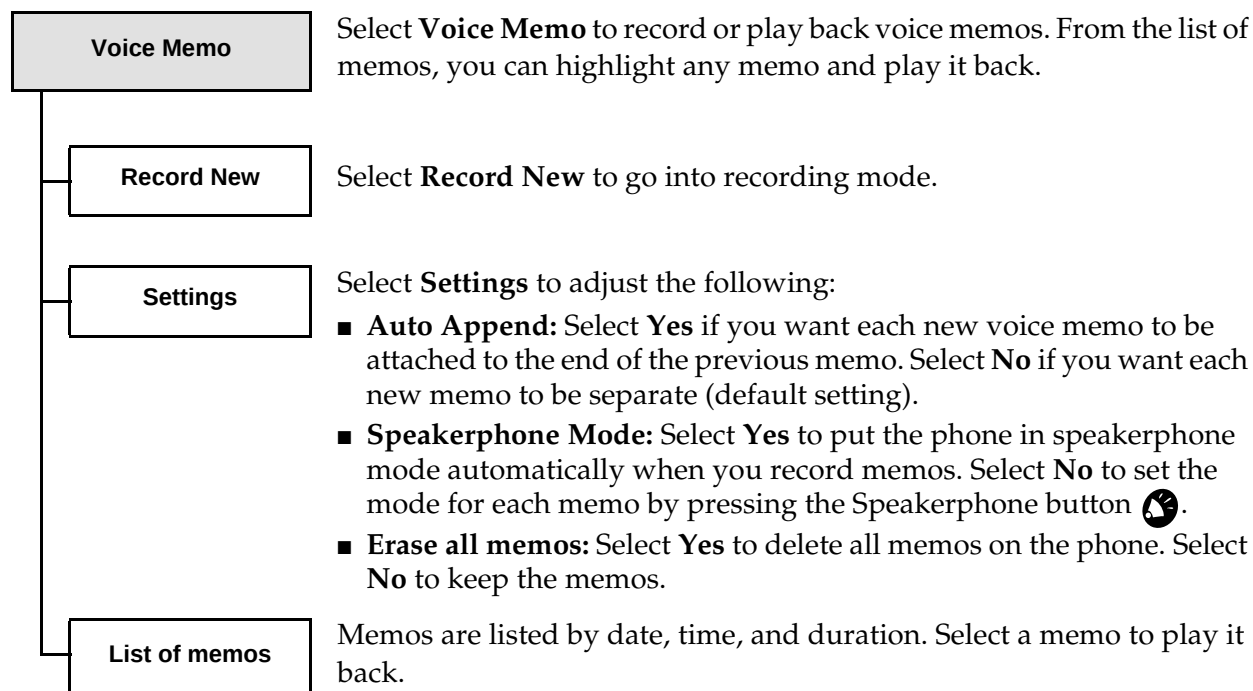
Messaging options



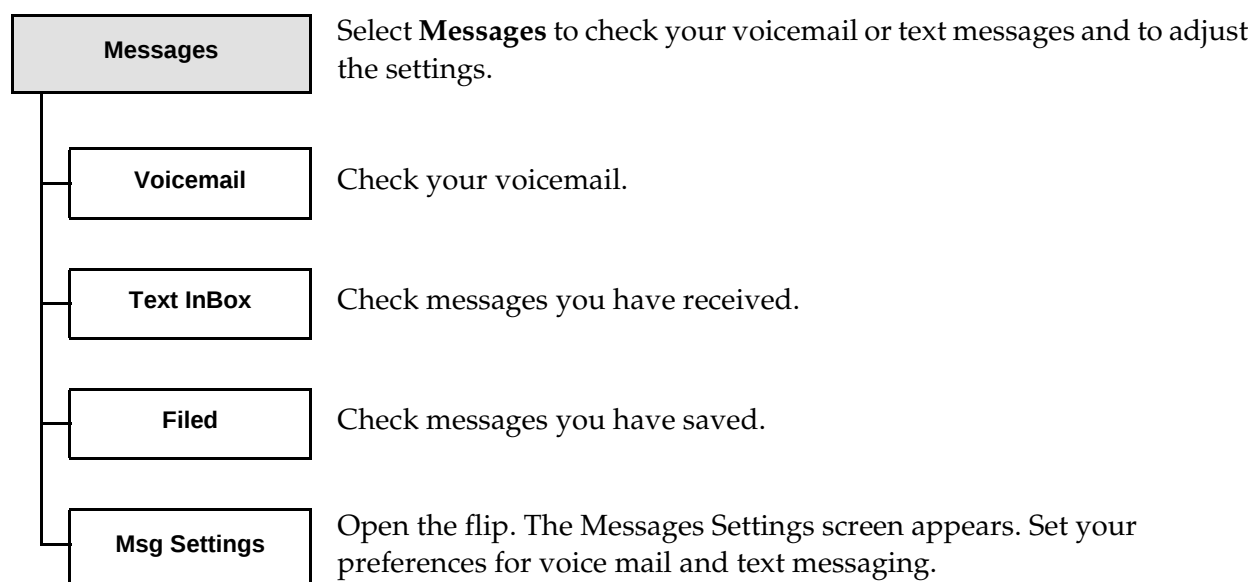
Accessories options



Voice Memo menu



Messages menu



Appendix B

Glossary

AC adapter	A power cable to connect the phone to an AC power outlet and charge the phone battery.
analog mode	The traditional method of modulating radio signals to carry information, used in AM/FM radio and cellular telephones. If the Kyocera smartphone cannot find a digital signal, it switches to analog mode. (See also digital mode.)
any-key answer	The ability to answer a call by pressing any key on the keypad except the backlight key, the Clear  key, or the shuttle. To turn this feature on or off, see “Setting Phone preferences” on page 206.
auto answer	A feature setting the phone to answer calls automatically after two rings. To turn this feature on or off, see “Setting Phone preferences” on page 206.
banner	A name or other text that appears on the screen when the phone is idle and the flip is closed. To enter this text, tap Preferences  in the Applications Launcher. Select Phone Preferences from the pick-list in the upper right corner and enter the text in the My Banner field.
blind-copied message	A message that is copied to one or more people without the knowledge of other persons to whom that message is sent or copied
bookmark	A Web file that lets you quickly connect to a site you have previously visited and marked (like a bookmark placed in a book)
BPS	Bits per second, a measurement of data transmission speed. The Kyocera smartphone transmits data over the air at 14,400 bits per second. (often written as 14.4K BPS).
cache (memory)	The amount of memory available for an application to use. Memory allocated to one application cannot be used by other applications.
call forwarding	A phone option that permits you to reroute incoming calls to a different telephone number, either all the time or only when your phone number is busy or doesn’t answer
call history	A list of the last 199 calls you have sent or received
call waiting	An option available from your telephone service provider. When you’re engaged in a call, a signal notifies you that another call has arrived.
carrier features	Options available from your telephone service provider. Since these options vary, you must contact your service provider for detailed information.

CDMA	Code Division Multiple Access, a spread-spectrum telephone technology that digitally encodes your call as it is transmitted and decodes it when it is received. CDMA provides both increased security and greater efficiency in using available wireless bandwidth.
command	An instruction that causes a computer to perform an action
conduit	A program that controls how records are moved during a HotSync operation
contacts list	The entries from your Address Book when viewed with the flip closed. The contacts list includes names and phone numbers for all entries. To see addresses, categories, and other information, open the flip and view the Address Book.
cradle	The unit designed for storing the Kyocera smartphone, recharging its battery, and synchronizing data with a computer
data transmission	The technology of transmitting and receiving information over communication channels
default domain	The name that an email program automatically adds to an unqualified name addressed in messages. An unqualified name is a name that doesn't have an "@" sign followed by a domain name. The default domain can be used to save time if you need to address large numbers of messages to users in the same domain you work in.
dialog	A temporary box or window of information that prompts you to enter and/or select information that is necessary for a task to continue
digital mode	A method of transmitting information (both voice and data) by converting it to binary code. Digital transmission provides stronger reception, greater call handling capacity, improved call privacy, and the potential for data services. The Kyocera smartphone operates in digital mode on two frequencies (800 MHz and 1900 MHz). If it cannot find a digital signal, it switches to analog mode. (See also analog mode.)
DNS	Domain Name System, a mechanism on the Internet for translating the domain names of host computers (server.company.com , for example) into IP addresses
domain name	The address of a network connection, written as a sequence of words separated by dots such as server.business.com
DTMF	Dual Tone Multi-Frequency, a method of using tones to communicate commands and responses to and from a master controlling unit. These are the tones you hear when you dial a telephone.
dual band	Able to operate in two frequency ranges—800 MHz and 1900 MHz. Your Kyocera smartphone is a dual band phone.
email	Electronic mail, a store-and-forward service for text and graphical messages from one computer to another. The information is stored for you until you log into the system to retrieve the messages.

ESN	Electronic Serial Number, a unique code that identifies each mobile phone. It is printed on the back of the Kyocera smartphone. You may be asked for this number if you contact Customer Care.
extension	Part of a file name or URL. An extension begins with a period and usually has three characters (for example, edu, gov, or com).
field	A location where you enter data; in your Kyocera smartphone, a field is often displayed as a line where you can write information
Graffiti	The handwriting recognition software included on your Kyocera smartphone
handset	Another name for any ordinary telephone; may refer to the part of the telephone containing the mouthpiece and receiver
hard reset	A reset of the Kyocera smartphone that erases all data
home screen	The screen that appears when you turn on the phone.
host name	The name given to a mainframe computer
HotSync	A technology that synchronizes information between a Palm connected device and a computer. You can run a HotSync operation using the cradle, the infrared port, a data cable, or over a network. See Chapter 4—Transferring Information.
HTML	Hypertext Markup Language, the software authoring language used on the Internet's World Wide Web
HTTP	Hypertext Transfer Protocol, the rules used by the web server and the browser to communicate (invisible to the user)
IAP	Internet Access Provider, a service that provides companies and individuals with a link to the Internet
idle	The state of your phone when it is turned on and has acquired a signal, but no call is currently in progress.
idle timeout	The amount of time the Kyocera smartphone waits before dropping a connection with your ISP or dial-in server after a network application closes
incoming server	The server that receives incoming email messages (sometimes called a POP server). Email messages you receive are delivered to your account on this server.
Internet	The worldwide set of interconnected networks that share the same network address scheme and use the TCP/IP protocol
intranet	A network within a company or organization
IP Address	Internet Protocol Address, the address that identifies the network to which each computer on a TCP/IP network is attached as well as the computer's unique identification

IrDA port	Infrared port, a port on the top of the Kyocera smartphone that transmits data wirelessly to another device with an infrared port (such as a laptop computer, another Kyocera smartphone, or a Palm device).
ISP	Internet Service Provider, a vendor who provides direct access to the Internet
Keyguard	A feature that locks the keypad to protect against accidental keypresses. Keyguard is automatically engaged after a few minutes when the phone is on but not in a call.
LED	Light-emitting diode, the status light on the upper right of the Kyocera smartphone near the base of the antenna. The LED flashes to indicate status (home, roaming, or no signal) when the phone is powered on.
lock code	A four-digit sequence of numbers (usually 0000 or the last four digits of your phone number). You can restrict access to the phone using the lock code.
mail host	The computer on which email messages are stored
MAPI	Mail Application Programming Interface, an Internet standard format for email
menu	A list of choices. When the flip is closed, you move through menus and make choices using the shuttle. When the flip is open, you move through menus and make choices using the stylus.
MIME	Multipurpose Internet Mail Extension, an extension to Internet mail that adds support for the exchange of multi-part messages, including binary files
NAM	Number Assignment Module, the code that identifies a phone's home service area. The NAM contains all the settings for your service provider. You can set up only one NAM on your Kyocera smartphone.
OTA	Over The Air, an acronym used to refer to wireless voice or data transmission
password	A combination of letters (or letters and numbers) used to gain access to a network and/or computer system. Passwords are security measures that help to prevent unauthorized persons from working with another person's computer resources or obtaining access to a network.
PDA	Personal Digital Assistant, an electronic organizer such as a Palm connected device. On a Kyocera smartphone, the terms <i>PDA</i> or <i>organizer</i> refer to the applications you use with the flip open, as distinct from the features you use when the flip is closed.
pick list	A list of choices that appears when you tap ▼ on the Kyocera smartphone screen
point-to-point	A term used to describe a data channel which connects two—and only two—computers

POP or POP3	Post Office Protocol, the Internet standard protocol for retrieving messages on a computer
PRC	An application that can be downloaded from a computer to a Palm device or Kyocera smartphone via a HotSync operation.
prefix	The number you dial before the telephone number to reach an outside line
protocol	A set of rules followed by two computers when they communicate with one another
proxy	A software agent that acts on behalf of the user
real name	The name assigned to your principal account in an electronic mail system. The real name is generally your first and last name. It appears in the From field of all your outgoing messages and identifies to your recipients who the mail is from.
return address	The email address at which you can be reached. Along with your real name, the return address appears in the From field of all your outgoing messages. It is usually in the following form: loginname@incomingmailserver
RF	Radio frequency
roaming	Using telephone services outside of the area covered by your home service provider. The  icon appears on the screen when the phone is roaming.
screen key	The large key at the top of the Kyocera smartphone used to turn the backlight and screen display on and off
script	A file used by some communications programs to automate logging onto services such as email
scroll bar	A bar at the right border of a window whose contents are not completely visible. Each scroll bar contains two scroll arrows and a scroll box that you can tap to move through the contents of the window.
service template	A set of network configurations that you can create, save, and reuse. See “Creating and using service templates” on page 180.
serial port	An input/output port used to connect serial devices, such as a mouse, external modem, or the Kyocera smartphone cradle, to a computer
shuttle	The semi-circular key on the left side of the Kyocera smartphone. You move the shuttle up and down to scroll through lists. You press it in to make selections
signal strength	The amount of radio frequency energy the phone is receiving, shown by the  icon. Both weather and distance affect signal strength. The more bars (up to 4 as shown here), the stronger the signal. If there are no bars, calls may be disconnected.

SMS	Short Message Service, a service that provides short text messages or pages sent by phone. The Messages application accepts SMS messages.
SMTP	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol, the Internet standard protocol for sending electronic messages from one computer to another
soft reset	A reset of the Kyocera smartphone that restarts the telephone features and Palm applications without erasing data
talk time	The amount of time you can talk on a wireless phone when the battery is fully charged.
TCP/IP	Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol, the standard rules used for data transmission over the Internet
trimode	Able to operate in (and switch between) three modes—CDMA digital service at both 800 MHz and 1900 MHz, and analog cellular service at 800 MHz. Your Kyocera smartphone is a trimode phone.
URL	Uniform Resource Locator, the address of an Internet location A URL typically takes the form http://www/locationname.com
username	A name provided by your ISP or your organization's email administrator. It usually consists of the text that appears before the @ sign in your return email address (for example, in Beatrix@company.com , the login name is Beatrix).
WAP	Wireless Application Protocol, a technology used to support Internet services on wireless phones
web browser	A program for accessing Web sites on the Internet

End-User Software License Agreement

IMPORTANT: Read before using this product

YOU SHOULD CAREFULLY READ THE FOLLOWING TERMS AND CONDITIONS BEFORE USING THIS PRODUCT. IT CONTAINS SOFTWARE, THE USE OF WHICH IS LICENSED BY KYOCERA WIRELESS CORP. ("KYOCERA") TO ITS CUSTOMERS FOR THEIR USE ONLY AS SET FORTH BELOW. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT, DO NOT USE THE SOFTWARE. USING ANY PART OF THE SOFTWARE INDICATES THAT YOU ACCEPT THESE TERMS.

LICENSE: Kyocera grants you a nonexclusive license to use the accompanying software program(s) (the "Software") subject to the terms and restrictions set forth in this License Agreement. You are not permitted to lease or rent (except under separate mutually agreeable terms set forth in writing), distribute or sublicense the Software or to use the Software in a time-sharing arrangement or in any other unauthorized manner. Further, no license is granted to you in the human readable code of the Software (source code). Except as provided below, this License Agreement does not grant you any rights to patents, copyrights, trade secrets, trademarks, or any other rights in respect to the Software.

The Software is licensed to be used on any personal computer and/or any Kyocera product, provided that the Software is used only in connection with Kyocera products. With respect to the Desktop software, you may reproduce and provide one (1) copy of such Software for each personal computer or Kyocera product on which such Software is used as permitted hereunder. With respect to the Device Software, you may use such Software only on one (1) Kyocera product. Otherwise, the Software and supporting documentation may be copied only as essential for backup or archive purposes in support of your use of the Software as permitted hereunder. You must reproduce and include all copyright notices and any other proprietary rights notices appearing on the Software on any copies that you make.

NO ASSIGNMENT; NO REVERSE ENGINEERING: You may transfer the Software and this License Agreement to another party if the other party agrees in writing to accept the terms and conditions of this License Agreement. If you transfer the Software, you must at the same time either transfer all copies of the Software as well as the supporting documentation to the same party or destroy any such materials not transferred. Except as set forth above, you may not transfer or assign the Software or your rights under this License Agreement.

Modification, reverse engineering, reverse compiling, or disassembly of the Software is expressly prohibited. However, if you are a European Community

("EC") resident, information necessary to achieve interoperability of the Software with other programs within the meaning of the EC Directive on the Legal Protection of Computer Programs is available to you from Kyocera upon written request.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You agree that you will not export or re-export the Software or accompanying documentation (or any copies thereof) or any products utilizing the Software or such documentation in violation of any applicable laws or regulations of the United States or the country in which you obtained them.

TRADE SECRETS; TITLE: You acknowledge and agree that the structure, sequence and organization of the Software are the valuable trade secrets of Kyocera and its suppliers. You agree to hold such trade secrets in confidence. You further acknowledge and agree that ownership of, and title to, the Software and all subsequent copies thereof regardless of the form or media are held by Kyocera and its suppliers.

UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT LEGEND: The Software is commercial in nature and developed solely at private expense. The Software is delivered as "Commercial Computer Software" as defined in DFARS 252.227-7014 (June 1995) or as a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101(a) and as such is provided with only such rights as are provided in this License Agreement, which is Kyocera's standard commercial license for the Software. Technical data is provided with limited rights only as provided in DFAR 252.227-7015 (Nov. 1995) or FAR 52.227-14 (June 1987), whichever is applicable.

TERM AND TERMINATION: This License Agreement is effective until terminated. You may terminate it at any time by destroying the Software and documentation together with all copies and merged portions in any form. It will also terminate immediately if you fail to comply with any term or condition of this License Agreement. Upon such termination you agree to destroy the Software and documentation, together with all copies and merged portions in any form.

GOVERNING LAW: This License Agreement shall be governed by the laws of the State of California as such laws are applied to agreements entered into and to be performed entirely within California between California residents and by the laws of the United States. You agree that the United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods (1980) is hereby excluded in its entirety from application to this License Agreement.

LIMITED WARRANTY; LIMITATION OF LIABILITY: All warranties and limitations of liability applicable to the Software are as stated on the Limited Warranty Card or in the product manual accompanying the Software. Such warranties and limitations of liability are incorporated herein in their entirety by this reference.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY: TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, KYOCERA EXCLUDES FOR ITSELF AND ITS SUPPLIERS ANY LIABILITY, WHETHER BASED IN CONTRACT OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), FOR INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES OF ANY KIND, OR FOR LOSS OF REVENUE OR PROFITS, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF INFORMATION OR DATA, OR OTHER FINANCIAL LOSS ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SALE, INSTALLATION,

MAINTENANCE, USE, PERFORMANCE, FAILURE, OR INTERRUPTION OF THIS PRODUCT, EVEN IF KYOCERA OR ITS AUTHORIZED RESELLER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, AND LIMITS ITS LIABILITY TO REPLACEMENT OR REPAIR OF THE PRODUCT OR PART, OR REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE PAID, AT THE OPTION OF KYOCERA. THIS DISCLAIMER OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES WILL NOT BE AFFECTED IF ANY REMEDY PROVIDED HEREIN SHALL FAIL OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

SEVERABILITY: In the event any provision of this License Agreement is found to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforceability of any of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired and a valid, legal and enforceable provision of similar intent and economic impact shall be substituted therefor.

ENTIRE AGREEMENT: This License Agreement sets forth the entire understanding and agreement between you and Kyocera, supersedes all prior agreements, whether written or oral, with respect to the Software, and may be amended only in writing signed by both parties.

Index

A

- accented characters
 - using Graffiti, 57
 - using on-screen keyboard, 52
- accessories, 21
- adding
 - Address Book entry, 95
 - Date Book event, 120
 - Expense item, 135
 - memo, 156
 - To Do item, 237
- Address Book
 - beaming, 104
 - calling from, 31
 - creating business card, 103
 - creating entry, 95
 - custom fields, 107
 - features, 94
 - making a call from, 96
 - menu commands, 106
 - preferences, 107
 - with keypad closed, 30
- adjusting
 - speaker volume, 39
- aircraft safety, 268
- alarm
 - setting in Date Book, 123
- alert
 - change in status, 217
 - missed call, 279
 - when roaming, 218
- answering calls
 - any key answer, 209
 - flip closed, 36
 - flip open, 36
 - hands-free, 37, 38
 - in car kit, 207
 - putting caller on hold, 36
 - second call, 36
 - setting up Auto Answer, 207
- antenna, 14
- any-key answer, turning on or off, 209
- appending voice memos, 255

applications

- attaching notes, 65
- controls, 59
- installing, 66
- menus, 59
- opening, 49
- removing, 69
- switching, 49

Applications Launcher, 49

area code, entering automatically, 209

attaching

- note to Address Book entry, 106
- note to Date Book event, 132
- note to To Do item, 242

Auto Answer, 37, 207

Auto Append, 255, 284

auto-hyphen, turning on or off, 209

B

backlight

- location on phone, 14
- setting how long light stays on, 208

battery

- back-up battery, 266
- charge icon, 18
- low battery signal, 18
- removing, 267
- strength indicator, 15

baud rate, 192

beaming

- Address Book entries, 104
- business card, 103, 106
- Date Book events, 132
- memos, 159, 160
- To Do items, 242
- troubleshooting, 93, 261
- using, 91
- using full-screen pen stroke to beam data, 199

billing

- roaming, 18

blasting areas, 268

browser

- setting up, 173

business card

- beaming, 103, 106
- creating, 103

buttons

- changing applications assigned to buttons, 197

C

- call
 - setting missed call alert, 279
- Call History
 - copying data to Address Book, 112
 - creating Expense record, 114
 - deleting calls, 113
 - features, 108
 - making a call from, 110
 - menu commands, 116
 - opening, 109
 - preferences, 114
 - sorting, 111
 - tracking calls, 111
- call in progress, 15
- call waiting, disabling, 177
- calling
 - from Address Book, 31, 96
 - from Call History, 110
 - from Contacts list, 30
 - from keypad, 24
 - from Recent Calls list, 110
 - most recently dialed number, 32
 - no signal, 18
 - voice dialing, 245
- calling cards, 177
- capital letters, 55
- care of phone, 263
- category
 - beaming Address Book categories, 104
 - choosing, 62
 - creating new, 63
 - merging, 65
 - putting To Do items in categories, 238
 - renaming, 64
 - using in lists, 63
 - viewing by, 63
- CDMA voice privacy, 18
- changing
 - buttons, 197
 - categories, 64
 - from one application to another, 49
 - speaker volume, 39
- CHAP authentication, 208
- charge icon, 18
- check box, 59
- CLR key, 24
- conduit
 - defined, 87
- conference calls, 34
- configuring
 - multiple devices, 84
- conflicts, viewing in Date Book, 130
- connecting to Internet, 35

- contacts
 - contacts menu, 275
- Contacts list
 - making calls, 30
- Copy, 61
- copying
 - from Call History to Address Book, 112
- country preferences, selecting, 203
- cradle
 - connecting, 73
 - synchronizing data, 74
- creating
 - Address Book entry, 95
 - Expense item, 135
 - memo, 156
 - To Do item, 237
- custom fields in Address Book, 107
- Cut, 61

D

- data port, 14
- data/fax mode
 - defined, 188
 - setting up, 188
 - using, 190
- date
 - changing on Expense item, 136
 - setting date, 205
 - setting due date in To Do List, 239
- Date Book
 - adding event, 120
 - beaming events, 132
 - commands in Options menu, 133
 - deleting events, 126
 - deleting note, 132
 - event conflicts, 130
 - features, 119
 - menus, 132
 - month view, 130
 - new event, 120
 - private events, 124
 - scheduling event for current day, 120
 - scheduling future event, 121
 - setting alarm, 123
 - setting preferences, 133
 - switching views, 128
 - untimed events, 122
 - week view, 128
- defined, 174

- deleting
 - applications, 69
 - calls from Call History, 113
 - Date Book events, 126
 - event, 132
 - Expense items, 153
 - memo, 159, 160
 - note in Date Book, 132
 - Palm Desktop, 69
 - service template, 182
 - To Do item, 239
 - voice memos, 252, 253, 284
- dial 1 before all numbers, 210
- Dialer
 - making call from, 25
 - setting preferences, 26, 27
- dialing
 - conference call, 34
 - Contacts list, 30
 - keypad, 24
 - one-touch dialing, 210
 - redial, 32
- digital icon, 18
- digital service, 15
- Digitizer, using, 203
- DNS
 - entering, 179
 - query DNS, 179
- Domain Naming System, 179
- driving safety, 268, 269
- due date, setting in To Do List, 239
- E**
- Edit menu, 61
- editing
 - expense record from Call History, 114
 - memos, 156
 - To Do items, 238
- email, 172
 - connecting to ISP, 35
- ending calls, 38
- entering text
 - Graffiti, 52
 - on-screen keyboard, 51
- entries
 - assigning to categories, 62
 - attaching notes, 65
 - marking as private, 66
- envelope icon, 18
- erasing
 - voice memos, 252, 253, 284
- event
 - adding new, 132
 - changing to untimed, 122
 - conflicts, 130
 - deleting, 126, 132
 - in week view, 128
 - private, 124
 - purging past events, 132
 - scheduling an untimed event, 122
 - scheduling for current day, 120
 - scheduling future event, 121
- Expense
 - Call History data, 114
 - creating new item, 135
 - receipt details, 136
- explosive areas, 268
- F**
- fax
 - putting phone in data/fax mode, 188
 - setting up data/fax mode, 188
- File Link, 85
- Find command, 43
- Find Name key, 15
- finding
 - text, 43
- firewall, 187
- flip-closed menus, using, 271
- fonts, setting, 61
- formats
 - setting date and time formats, 204
 - setting number formats, 204
- full-screen pen stroke, 198
- G**
- Go to Date, 121
- Graffiti
 - accented characters, 57
 - alphabet, 53
 - capital letters, 55
 - concepts, 53
 - defined, 52
 - menu shortcuts, 60
 - navigation strokes, 58
 - numbers, 56
 - online help, 61
 - problems recognizing handwriting, 261
 - punctuation marks, 56
 - shortcuts, 58
 - symbols, 56
 - writing characters, 54
 - writing tips, 54
- Graffiti help
 - assigning to full-screen pen stroke, 198

H

- hands-free
 - answering calls, 37, 38
 - auto answer always, 37, 207
 - auto answer in car kit, 207
 - setting up, 37
 - Voice Answer, 38, 279
- handwriting, problems, 261
- hard pause, 99
- headset jack, 14
- hearing aid, using phone with, 268
- help
 - in Graffiti, 61
 - notes in the Palm Desktop directory, 256
 - online tips, 257
- hold, putting caller on hold, 36
- home area indicator, 18
- home screen, 13
- home service, 15
- HotSync operation
 - creating user profile, 84
 - customizing, 87
 - File Link, 85
 - infrared port, 81
 - local, 75
 - setup options, 85
 - synchronizing with data file, 85
 - troubleshooting, 90, 260
- hyphens, automatically inserting in phone numbers, 209

I

- idle timeout, 178
- infrared port
 - beaming data, 91
 - synchronizing data with computer, 81
 - troubleshooting, 93, 261
- Install Tool (Palm Desktop), 66
- installing
 - applications, 66
 - Palm Desktop software, 71
- international characters
 - Graffiti, 57
 - on-screen keyboard, 52
- Internet
 - connecting to, 35
- IP address, 179, 286

K

- key
 - setting key beep length, 279
 - setting key beep sounds, 279

- keyboard
 - assigning to full-screen pen stroke, 198
 - chart, 52
 - using on-screen keyboard, 51
- keyguard, 221
 - padlock icon, 18
- keypad
 - answering calls, 209
 - keys on the phone, 15
 - setting key beep volume, 208
 - setting preferences, 208

L

- large icon view, 272
- LED, 14, 18
- length of phone numbers, 210
- letters
 - choosing font style, 61
 - writing with Graffiti, 53
- license, 291
- light, adjusting backlight, 208
- list menu view, 271
- locking phone
 - assigning to full-screen pen stroke, 199
- login script, 184
- looking up information
 - Find, 43

M

- making calls
 - from Address Book, 31, 96
 - from Contacts list, 30
 - from Dialer, 25
 - from keypad, 24
 - from Speed Dial, 28
 - voice dialing, 245
- medical devices, using phone near, 268
- Memo Pad
 - beaming memo, 159
 - creating memo, 156
 - deleting memo, 159
 - editing memos, 156
 - features, 155
 - marking private memo, 158
 - menus, 160
 - troubleshooting, 263
- memos, voice
 - appending text, 255
 - deleting all, 253
 - deleting memo, 252
 - naming memo, 251
 - recording memo, 248
 - replaying memo, 250
 - settings, 254

menus

- Address Book, 106
- Call History, 116
- choosing a command, 60
- Date Book, 132
- Edit menu, 61
- large icon view, 272
- list menu view, 271
- Memo Pad, 160
- shortcuts, 60
- To Do List, 242
- using, 59, 271

messages

- checking, 164
- envelope icon, 18
- setting up Messages application, 163

Messages key, 15

Minute Alert, 279

missed call

- setting alert, 279

modem, 188

- opening Modem Emulation, 192

modifying

- expense record from Call History, 114
- To Do items, 238

month, Date Book view, 130

mute call, 39, 273

N

name

- entering for voice dialing, 244
- two devices with same user name, 91
- voice memo, 251

navigation strokes in Graffiti, 58

network

- connection types, 178
- disabling call waiting, 177
- DNS, 179
- idle time, 178
- login script, 184
- password, 175
- phone settings, 176
- selecting service, 174
- setting up browser, 173
- user name, 174

network connections

- setting up, 171, 172

new

- Address Book entry, 95
- Date Book event, 120, 132
- Expense item, 135
- memo, 156, 160

no service, 15

no signal icon, 18

no signal indicator, 18

note

- attaching to Address Book entry, 106
- attaching to Date Book event, 132
- attaching to To Do item, 242
- creating, 65

numbers

- entering with on-screen keyboard, 51
- writing, 56

O

on call icon, 18

one-touch dialing

- turning on or off, 210

on-screen keyboard

- chart, 51, 52
- opening, 61

opening

- preferences screens, 197

Options menu

- commands in Date Book, 133

over-the-air tones, setting, 208

own phone number, 34, 273

P

padlock icon, 18

pages

- checking, 164
- envelope icon, 18

Palm Desktop

- installing, 71
- removing, 69
- system requirements, 72
- using the Install Tool, 66

password

- for network, 175
- forgotten password, 262

past events, purging from Date Book, 132

Paste, 61

pause, 99, 273

pen, full-screen pen stroke, 198

phone calls

- answering, 36
- from Address Book, 31, 96
- from Call History, 110
- from Contacts list, 30
- from keypad, 24
- from Recent Calls list, 110
- tracking in Call History, 111
- voice dialing, 245

phone info, 273

Phone Lookup, 161

phone numbers

- automatically inserting hyphens, 209
- own phone number, 34, 273

- phone preferences
 - setting basic, 206
 - setting for network connections, 176
- phone ringer
 - setting sound, 215
- phone setup
 - calling cards, 177
 - disabling call waiting, 177
- playing back voice memos, 250
- power (in battery), 18
- power port, 14
- power preferences, setting, 211
- PRC files, 66
- preferences
 - Address Book, 107
 - button preferences, 197
 - Call History, 114
 - connection preferences, 199
 - country, 203
 - data and time formats, 204
 - Date Book, 133
 - Dialer, 26, 27
 - dialing preferences, 209
 - format preferences, 203
 - keypad preferences, 208
 - messages, 169
 - network, 172
 - number formats, 204
 - opening preferences screens, 197
 - pen preferences, 198
 - phone preferences, 206
 - power preferences, 211
 - registry preferences, 213
 - service preferences, 210
 - sounds preferences, 215
 - status alerts, 217
- prefixes to phone numbers, adding automatically, 210
- primary DNS, 179
- printing
 - expense reports, 140
- priority, setting for To Do list, 238
- privacy, enhanced CDMA voice privacy, 18
- private entries
 - creating, 66
 - Date Book event, 124
 - memo, 158
- punctuation marks
 - auto-hyphen in phone numbers, 209
 - Graffiti, 56
 - on-screen keyboard, 51
- purging
 - Expense categories, 153
 - past events from Date Book, 132

Q

- query DNS, 179

R

- radio frequency energy, 267
- receipts, entering information, 136
- receiving calls
 - messages, 18
 - no signal, 18
- recent calls
 - making a call from Recent Calls list, 110
 - viewing Recent Calls list, 109
- recording voice memos, 248
- records
 - attaching notes, 65
 - beaming, 104
 - displaying by category, 63
 - marking as private, 66
- redialing most recently called number, 32
- registry preferences
 - setting, 213
- release, 99, 273
- removing
 - applications, 69
 - battery, 266
 - Date Book event, 126
 - Palm Desktop, 69
- replaying voice memos, 250
- resetting
 - phone, 258, 267
- RF energy
 - exposure, 267
 - unsafe areas, 268
- ringer
 - setting sound, 215
 - silencing, 40
- roaming
 - icon, 18
 - LED indicator, 15
 - setting alert, 218
- roaming indicator, 18

S

- safety
 - driving guidelines, 269
 - pacemaker, 268
 - RF energy, 267
 - unsafe areas, 268
- scheduling
 - event for current day, 120
 - future event, 121
 - selecting a date, 121
 - untimed event, 122

- screen
 - icons, 18
 - turning off after x minutes, 212, 222
 - script, login, 184
 - searching
 - Find, 43
 - secondary DNS, 179
 - security
 - creating private entries, 66
 - forgotten password, 262
 - password, 175
 - Select All, 61
 - sending data, 91
 - service area, roaming, 18
 - service preferences
 - changing, 210
 - service template, 174
 - creating, 180
 - deleting, 182
 - setting
 - alarm in Date Book, 123
 - font style, 61
 - format preferences, 203
 - HotSync options, 85
 - keypad preferences, 208
 - preferences in Date Book, 133
 - status alerts, 217
 - setting up
 - Messages application, 163
 - multiple devices, 84
 - Voice Dial, 244
 - Settings
 - voice memos, 284
 - setup options
 - HotSync, 85
 - shortcuts
 - creating, 213
 - Graffiti, 58
 - menus, 60
 - shuttle, 14
 - signal strength, 15, 18
 - Silence Sounds key, 15
 - silencing sounds, 40
 - Smart Sound, 279
 - soft reset, 267
 - sorting
 - Call History list, 111
 - sounds
 - adjusting, 279
 - adjusting speaker volume, 39
 - muting call, 39
 - setting phone alerts, 215
 - setting preferences, 215
 - silencing all, 40
 - speaker
 - adjusting volume, 39
 - Speakerphone
 - for voice memos, 284
 - speakerphone
 - for voice memos, 255
 - Speakerphone key, 15
 - Speed Dial
 - making call from, 29
 - standby time
 - battery charge icon, 18
 - status alerts, 217
 - status light, 15, 18
 - stylus, 14
 - suffixes to phone numbers, adding automatically, 210
 - symbol shift, 56
 - symbols
 - Graffiti, 56
 - on-screen keyboard, 51
 - sync cradle
 - connecting, 73
 - synchronizing data
 - connecting cradle, 73
 - first time, 74
 - system requirements, 72
- ## T
- talk time
 - battery charge icon, 18
 - text entry
 - accented characters, 57
 - capital letters, 55
 - choosing font style, 61
 - Graffiti, 52
 - Graffiti shortcuts, 58
 - Graffiti tips, 54
 - numbers, 56
 - on-screen keyboard, 51
 - punctuation marks, 56
 - symbols, 56
 - time
 - setting alarm, 123
 - setting phone to turn on or off at specific times, 212
 - setting time, 205
 - tracking call length, 111
 - timed pause, 99
 - To Do List
 - adding items, 237
 - deleting item, 239
 - display options, 240
 - features, 236
 - menus, 242

- tracking
 - call expenses, 114
- training Voice Dial, 244
- transmitting data, 91
- troubleshooting
 - general problems, 261
 - Graffiti, 261
 - HotSync operation, 90
 - HotSync operations, 260
 - infrared communications, 93, 261
 - Memo Pad, 263
- turning off
 - phone off at set times, 212
 - screen after x minutes, 212, 222
- turning on
 - phone on at set times, 212
 - setting phone to power on at reset, 212
- turning on and off
 - phone, 12

U

- Undo, 61
- unmute call, 273
- untimed event, 122
- URLs
 - setting preferences, 213
- user name, 174
- user profile, 84

V

- viewing
 - entries by category, 63
- Voice Answer
 - menu, 279
 - setting up, 37, 38
- Voice Book, 244
- Voice Dial
 - training, 244
- voice dialing
 - entering names, 244
 - making calls, 245
- voice mail
 - driving safety, 269
 - entering voice mail phone number, 207
 - envelope icon, 18
 - setting up, 163
- voice memos
 - appending, 255
 - deleting all, 253, 284
 - deleting memo, 252
 - naming memo, 251
 - recording memo, 248
 - replaying memo, 250
 - settings, 254, 284

- volume
 - adjust during a call, 273
 - adjusting, 16
 - adjusting speaker volume, 39
 - muting call, 39
 - setting key beep volume, 208

W

- week
 - Date Book view, 128
- writing
 - accented characters, 57
 - capital letters, 55
 - Graffiti, 52
 - numbers, 56
 - on-screen keyboard, 51
 - punctuation marks, 56
 - symbols, 56
 - tips, 54



Kyocera Wireless Corp.
10300 Campus Point Drive, San Diego, CA 92121

Visit us at www.kyocera-wireless.com.

For the full line of Kyocera Wireless Corp. accessories
visit www.kyocera-wireless.com/store or contact your
local service provider or retailer.